Past Indefinite

Ved/\textit{V}_2
did

\(+\) Tom \textit{rode} a bicycle 3 days ago.

\(-\) Pat \textit{didn't work} on the computer yesterday.

\? Did you \textit{train} much last month?

\begin{center}
\underline{WHEN?} \\
( \underline{WHERE?} )
\end{center}

\begin{itemize}
\item yesterday
\item last
\item last year (month, week) ago
\item 3 days (weeks) ago
\item in 1995
\item the other day
\item the day before yesterday
\end{itemize}
Past Continuous

was/were +Ving

+ Tom was riding a bicycle while his friends were playing football.

- Pat was not working on the computer when the telephone rang.

? Where were you training at 3 o'clock?

WHEN?

a) at ... o'clock  
b) ... while ... was/were doing  
c) ... when ... was/were doing
LESSON 1

PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION

family
name, address, telephone number
character, appearance
likes and dislikes
date of birth, occupation, place of birth, age

LET US REVIEW

1. You meet a boy near the school. He is a new pupil in your class:
   a) ask him to answer your questions;
   b) tell your best friend all you’ve learnt about the new boy.

1. What’s your name (your surname)?
2. Where are you from? How old are you?
3. Where and when were you born?
4. When is your birthday?
5. What’s your address and telephone number?
6. What are your likes and dislikes?
7. How large is your family?
8. What does your father (mother, etc.) do?

---

1 Personal Identification [pə:snəl aɪˈdɛn.tɪfɪ.keɪʃn] — ао. Все о себе
2 appearance [əˈprɪəns] — внешность
3 etc. — et cetera — лат. и так далее
Here are two forms. The first one is Boris'. Look at it and say all you can about him. Then talk about yourself.

A group of boys and girls is leaving for London. They don’t know each other and have just met. What do you think they are saying to each other? Choose the possible questions/sentences from the list.

- Hi! (Hello!)
- Do you like the Russian winter?
- Nice to meet you.
- How old are you?
- Is it quiet in the street?
- I am fine.
- What’s your address?
- How old is your cousin?
- Where are you from?
- What’s your name?
- Where do you live?
- Pleased to meet you.
- Have you got a brother?
- How are you?

1 form [fɔrm] — анкета
2 Boris’ = Boris’s
4. Say what their telephone numbers are.

Nina: 454-17-36  
Klim: 332-14-02  
Vova: 430-29-50  
Larisa: 953-00-22  
Ksana: 955-38-40  
Andrei: 275-82-20

5. Listen to the text, p.11, and say which is Boris's (Vera's, Susan's, Lisa's and Paul's) telephone number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>112-1895</th>
<th>271-913</th>
<th>275-3618</th>
<th>444-2822</th>
<th>925-1414</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vera</td>
<td>or 112-8095</td>
<td>or 271-0930</td>
<td>or 275-2618</td>
<td>or 444-2822</td>
<td>or 925-4414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR**

**The Indefinite Tenses**

**to have (have got)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I you we you they</td>
<td>have = have got</td>
<td>I you he she it had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he she it</td>
<td>has = has got</td>
<td>you we you they will have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>will (shall) have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I have (or have got) three cousins.
My daughter has got (or has) two dogs.
The room's got (or has) two windows.
We had many animals on the farm.
They will have a car next month.
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>haven't have</td>
<td>haven't got have no</td>
<td>don't have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>didn't have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>(shan't) have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>won't have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>won't have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>won't have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I haven't got a flat. I don't have any brothers. I haven't any pets. I have no milk in the fridge.

He hasn't got a car. He doesn't have a car. He has no car. You won't have much work to do tomorrow.

They didn't have any classes yesterday. They had no children.

---

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have I you...?</th>
<th>Have we you...?</th>
<th>Do they have...?</th>
<th>Has he she...?</th>
<th>Does she it...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Did I you he she it have...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Will (Shall) I we have...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Will you he she it you have...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Will you they have...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Has Ann got a car? = Does Ann have a car? = Has Ann a car?
What have you got in your bag? = What do you have in your bag? = What have you in your bag?
How much money did they have?
Will you have time to finish it?

Say these sentences using the verb have (have got). Try and use as many versions1 as possible.

**EXAMPLE:** There is a wide door in the room.
The room has (has got) a wide door.

1. There are many actors in this theatre.
2. There are not any wide streets in this town.
3. Are there any wooden cups in the museum?
4. The woman’s voice is very weak.
5. There is no tower in the old square.
6. There won’t be any new settlements in this place.

---

**LET US LEARN**

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

1) First name, then surname: Tom Brown
   *(never Brown–Tom)*
2) You can say Mr John Smith or Mr Smith
   *(but never Mr–John)*
3) Mr2 + surname  
   Mrs + surname  
   Miss + surname  
   Ms + surname
   Mr Brown
   Mrs Brown
   Miss Brown
   Ms Brown

7) Using the model say who they are.

**EXAMPLE:** Her name is Angela.
Her surname is West.

---

1 version [və:ʃən] — sərˈvəsən
2 If you don’t know what Mr, Mrs, Miss and Ms stand for consult your vocabulary.
She is not married.¹
She is Miss Angela West.

1. His surname is Webster.
   His name is Adam.
   He is 20, not married.
   He is . . . . . .

2. The brothers’ surname is Brown.
   Their names are Tom and Ben.
   They are forty years old.
   They are . . . . . .

3. Her surname is Poster.
   Her name is Nell.
   She is 35, nobody knows if she is married.
   She is . . . . . .

4. Her name is Betty.
   Her surname is Williams.
   She is not married.
   She is . . . . . .

Look at the pictures and put Mr, Mrs, Miss, and Ms before the following surnames:

1. ... Brown, age 21, not married.

2. ... White, age 65, married.

3. ... Green, age 17, not married.

4. ... Barlow, age 40 (no information if she is married or not).

5. ... Bentley, age 31, married.

¹ married [ˈmænd] — замужем, женат
Look at the letters. Say in English where Peter, Michael, Boris, Nelly and Victor live.

**Example:** Boris lives at number 16 Lesnaya Road, Petrovskoye, Russia.
Could you say your address in English? Try and do it.

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

What’s your job? (most commonly used)
What do you do? (most commonly used)
What’s your profession?²
What’s your occupation?
What are you? (least commonly used³)

1. most commonly used — наиболее часто употребляется
2. profession = occupation = job
3. least commonly used — наименее употребительное

Look at the pictures and a) say what their jobs are; b) divide all the jobs into 3 columns: -er, -or, -man.
dancer, doctor, policeman, sailor, postman, singer, tailor, milkman, actor, driver, fisherman

12 Read the sentences to guess the meaning of the following jobs.
A baker [ˈbeɪkə] is a person who makes bread.
A butcher [ˈbʌtʃə] is a person who sells meat.
A grocer [ˈɡrɑːsə] is a person who sells sugar, flour, salt, etc.
A greengrocer [ˈɡriŋɡrɑːsə] is a person who sells fresh vegetables and fruit.
A nurse [nɜːs] is a person who works in hospitals and helps doctors.
A salesman [ˈsɛlzmən] is a person who sells different things.
A secretary [ˈsɪkrəti] is a person who works in the office and helps her boss with letters and other papers.
A typist [ˈtaɪpɪst] is a person who types letters and other papers.

13 Listen to the new words.  2. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

a baker, a butcher, a grocer, a greengrocer, a nurse, a salesman, a secretary, a typist

14 Look at the pictures and say what their jobs are.

1 to type [taɪp] — печатать (как правило, на пишущей машинке)
Listen to the song “When I Was a Soldier...”, ☼ 3.

WHEN I WAS A SOLDIER

When I was a soldier, a soldier, a soldier,
When I was a soldier,
This is how I went.
   When I was a policeman, a policeman, a policeman,
   When I was a policeman,
   This is how I went.
When I was a dentist, a dentist, a dentist,
When I was a dentist,
This is how I went.
   When I was a doctor, a doctor, a doctor,
   When I was a doctor,
   This is how I went.
When I was a barber,¹ a barber, a barber,
When I was a barber,
This is how I went.
   When I was a butcher, a butcher, a butcher,
   When I was a butcher,
   This is how I went.
When I was a baker, a baker, a baker,
When I was a baker,
This is how I went.

¹ a barber [ˈbɑːbə] — парикмахер (мужской)
When I was a grocer, a grocer, a grocer,  
When I was a grocer,  
This is how I went.

16 Listen to the dialogue. Choose the correct answers to the questions after the dialogue.

- Hello, what's your name?
  - Caroline.
  - Sorry?
  - It's Caroline.
  - Can you spell it, please?
  - C-a-r-o-l-i-n-e. What's your name?
  - It's Natasha. That's N-a-t-a-s-h-a.
  - Hello, Natasha. Do you live here?
  - Yes, I do. I live at 9 Apple Street, in Flat number 3.
  - What's your address, Caroline?
  - I live at 17 Main Road. My flat is number 3, too. Are you on the phone, Natasha?
  - Yes.
  - What's your telephone number?
  - That's 332-5448.

Questions:

1. What is Natasha's address?
   a) Flat number 3, 9 Apple Street. b) Flat number 3, 19 Apple Street. c) Flat number 3, 17 Main Road.

2. What is Natasha's telephone number?
   a) 332-5548   b) 332-4548   c) 332-5448

17 Read the dialogue (ex. 16) and act it out.

18 Think of your own dialogue (using ex. 16 as a model) and act it out. Don't forget to change over.

1 ex. = exercise
A FRIENDLY FAMILY

Caroline Porter has a large family. There are nine people in it. The oldest member of her family is her granny. You can hardly believe it but she is about 90. She lives in a small cottage in the country. Caroline’s granny is very interested in life. She is fond of gardening and has got a lot of beautiful and unusual flowers in her small tidy\(^1\) garden. When Caroline’s granny was young she was a greengrocer and worked in a small shop in the same street.

5. Caroline’s mother and father are architects. They are about 50 but look much younger. They are fond of ancient\(^2\) Russian churches and they often travel to Russia. They visit big cities and small towns. They are real specialists and know a lot. They often tell their family about their journeys. Caroline’s mother is called Debbie. She is a tall woman, slim\(^3\) and fair-haired,\(^4\) very clever and nice. Her husband’s name is Peter. Peter is shorter than his wife. He is thin and dark-haired. He is very brave. They have been married for 25 years and are real friends.

Debbie has a brother, Victor, and a sister, Alice, who is a nurse in a hospital. Alice is not married and has no children. Victor is a salesman. He is married and has two children — Bob and Polly. They are at primary school. Caroline’s cousins are very bright. They

\(^1\) tidy [ˈtaɪdi] — опрятный, аккуратный
\(^2\) ancient [ˈeɪskənt] — древний
\(^3\) slim [slim] — тонкий, стройный
\(^4\) fair-haired [ˈfeəˈhɛəd] — светловолосый
are not short but they are not tall either. They are both seven, fair-haired, pretty and polite. Their parents are proud of them. But sometimes the children are lazy.¹

Caroline's cousins like to play active games. They are never tired and are seldom quiet. They have got a very rich imagination. They like to read a lot and listen to their granny's stories. Victor's wife, Mary, is a typist. She works in a big firm.

All the members of the family are very friendly and hospitable. Their friends often come to see them and they all have wonderful parties.

---

20 Listen to the second paragraph of the text, 15, and get ready for test reading.

21 Name the jobs of all the members of the family.

22 Find in the text and read aloud the sentences to describe: a) Caroline's mother; b) Caroline's father; c) Caroline's cousins.

---

23 Describe Caroline's aunt and uncle. The pictures of ex. 19 and the words below can help you.

Slim, short, ugly, tall, dark-haired, fair-haired, long hair, lovely, round face, long nose, red lips, long arms, white teeth.

24 Choose any famous person you have read about (or about whom you know much) and describe him/her. Ex. 19 and ex. 22 can help you.

25 Describe any family you like very much. (You can use your imagination.)

¹ lazy [ˈleizi] — ленивый
26 Write down the names of all the jobs you can remember.
27 What questions do people usually ask when they want to know about somebody’s: a) name, b) date of birth, c) place of birth, d) age, e) home town, f) occupation, g) family, h) address, i) telephone number?
28 Your friend lives in Manchester, which is a big city in Great Britain. His house is No 2 in the High Street. Your friend’s surname is Barlow. His name is Patrick. Write his address in English.
29 Describe your classmate for the other pupils to guess who it is.
30 Do ex. 6, 9, 10 in writing.
31 Learn to write these words.

baker, butcher, grocer, greengrocer, nurse, salesman, secretary, typist, occupation, job, married

Listening Comprehension, 6, text “Tom’s Dream”
Home Reading Lesson 1, text “A Clever Salesman”

LESSON 2

DAILY LIFE

home (at home) house, rooms modern conveniences furniture at school

1 No = number
1. Say what people usually do in the kitchen, study, dining room, living room, sitting room, hall, bedroom, bathroom.

2. Name:
   - a piece of furniture to have meals at;
   - 2 pieces of furniture to lie on;
   - 4 pieces of furniture to sit on;
   - a piece of furniture to sit at and work;
   - things you may put on the walls;
   - a thing you may put on the floor;
   - things you may hang on the windows;
   - a piece of furniture to keep cups and glasses in;
   - a piece of furniture to keep food in (especially in hot weather);
   - a piece of furniture to keep books in;
   - a piece of furniture to cook meals on;
   - a piece of furniture to wash up in;
   - a piece of furniture to keep clothes in.

3. Say what you have got and what you haven’t got in your flat (house) and where this furniture is. The words can help you.

- picture  wardrobe  sink  carpet  table
- desk  chair  sofa  bed  cupboard
- lamp  mirror  bookcase  curtains  cooker
- armchair  blackboard  fire  standard lamp
The Present Continuous Tense

- is
- to be
- am + Ving
- are

now, at the moment

I am reading a book now.
Nick is not going downstairs, he is going upstairs.
— Are they leaving? — Yes, they are.
Where are they playing now?
— Who is laughing so loudly? — We are.
— Who is working in the study? — I am.

The Present Indefinite Tense

- always, usually, often, sometimes, seldom, never

Summer follows spring.
That happens every day.
My sisters always wear uniform when they go to school.
We get on well with Ann.
We don't wake up at 6 in summer. It doesn't usually happen. She doesn't usually join us for lunch.

Do you hear the sound of the bell? Does the corridor ['kɔrɪdər] lead to the tower? — No, it doesn't. Do they always lock this door? — Yes, they do.

**wh-questions**

When does he leave the house? Where do they usually sing? Why doesn't she cook here? How often do you work in the garden?


What are Peter and his friends doing at the moment and what do they do every day?

1. Peter *(read)* a magazine now and Ben and Tom *(work)* in the study.
2. Ann *(sing)* upstairs. She *(sing)* very well.
3. Mary and Susan *(not count)* at the moment. Nick *(count)* badly.
4. The door *(open)* easily. Peter *(open)* the door now.
5. Look! Sam *(leave)*. He always *(leave)* at 18.10.

\(^1\) *wh-questions* — *wh?* — специальные вопросы, обычно начинающиеся с вопросительных слов *what, when, where, why, who, which, whose* и т. д.

\(^2\) *In современном английском языке наблюдается тенденция писать названия учебных предметов со строчной буквы.*
5 Look at the pictures and say what the children are doing at the moment and what they usually (seldom, always, etc.) do. The words can help you.

to sing a song, to spend a holiday, to do lessons, to leave for Moscow, to lock something with the key, to wash the floor

6 Make these questions "wh"-questions. Follow the model.

**EXAMPLE:** Is Nelly laughing? (Why)
Why is Nelly laughing?
1. Do many people learn foreign languages? (Why)
2. Are they counting? (What)
3. Does the plane leave for London? (When)
4. Do they write letters to their friends? (How often)
5. Does it become dark here late? (When)
6. Is he joining us? (Who)
7. Does it often happen? (What)

This is Andrew’s timetable. Talk about yours and say what subjects you have and on what days.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DAY</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TIME</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Maths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.05</td>
<td>Nature Study</td>
<td>Sport</td>
<td>Swimming</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>Geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.10</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>Art</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lunch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.30</td>
<td>History</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Computer</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>Computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.55</td>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Nature Study</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>History</td>
<td>Art</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LET US LEARN**

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

The verbs that are not usually used in the present continuous tense: like, love, want, understand, hear, see, notice.
feel, remember, recognize, wish, know, forget, seem, believe, hate.

I hear someone calling me.
Do you understand me now?
Are you sure he knows where to go?
What do you feel?
I don't want any porridge at the moment.

Make the right choice: present indefinite or present continuous.

1. How you (feel)?
2. You (know) what he (read)?
3. I (not understand) what she (say).
4. He (not see) what the problem (be).
5. He (sleep) now. He (like) to sleep after dinner.
6. She (say) she (hear) nothing.
7. You (see) the man who (stand) near the window? He (want) to speak to you.

These are the new words for you to learn.
a) Guess what these words mean:

- electricity [ˌelkwəˈstri] — электричество
- gas [ɡæs] — газ
- cold and hot running water — холодная и горячая вода
- a washing machine [ˈwɒʃɪŋ məˈʃiːn] — стиральная машина
- a vacuum cleaner [ˈvækjuəm ˈkliːner] — пылесборник

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

- modern conveniences — современные удобства
- to turn on (off) — включать (выключать)
- central heating — центральное отопление

---

1 to recognize [rɪˈkɒnɪsaɪ] — узнавать
2 to wish [wɪʃ] — желать
3 to seem [siːm] — казаться
4 to hate [heɪt] — ненавидеть
c) Read the word combinations and sentences to know how to use these words.

It is important to have all modern conveniences in your flat. There were no modern conveniences in the house where I lived last summer. Does your granny have any modern conveniences in her house in the country?

The usual modern conveniences are: central heating, electricity, gas, hot and cold running water.

My younger sister likes to turn the light on and off. His elder brother always cleans carpets with the vacuum cleaner.

Is your washing machine on? Central heating is usually off in summer. The vacuum cleaner I wanted to buy was very expensive. Electricity lights our houses. The water is running. Turn it off! Turn on the vacuum cleaner, please. I'd like to clean the furniture. Is the fridge on? If not, turn it on, please!

10 Listen to the new words, 7. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

electricity, gas, cold and hot running water, a washing machine, a vacuum cleaner, modern conveniences, central heating, to turn on, to turn off, to be on, to be off

11 Make the sentences complete using on or off.

1. It is dark in the room. Turn the light ... .
2. It is cold in the room. The central heating is not ... .
3. It is very hot here, turn the electric fire ... .
4. In summer the central heating is usually ... in our houses.
5. My little brother can't turn ... the light. He is very small.
6. Early in the morning, when it is not dark outside we turn the light ... .
7. Mike is doing his lessons. Turn the television ..., please.
Look at the pictures and say where there are modern conveniences and where there are not.

A Modern Flat

The King's Palace

An Indian Settlement

Mr Porter's Cottage
13 Listen to the dialogue, 8. Read it and act it out.

Pete: Hi, Constance! Glad to meet you! How are you?
Constance: Fine, thanks. And you?
Pete: OK. You know, Constance, we have recently\textsuperscript{1} moved into a new flat.
Constance: Have you? What’s your address now?
Pete: It’s Flat number 7, 33 Kings Road. Our flat is large and comfortable, with all modern conveniences: gas, electricity, hot and cold running water. We’ve got central heating too.
Constance: I’m glad to hear that.

14 Think of your own dialogue according to the model of ex. 13. Choose a partner and act it out.

15 Listen to the song "Old Horace [ˈhɔrəs]", 9.

OLD HORACE

Old Horace lives with me.
When he comes home at three,
He knocks at the door,
He rolls\textsuperscript{2} on the floor
And comes to sit with me.
He watches my TV,
He sits right on my knee,\textsuperscript{3}
He takes a nap\textsuperscript{4}
Upon my lap.\textsuperscript{5}
That’s where he likes to be.

Chorus: Ba, ba, ba, ba, ba, ba.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{1} recently [ˈriːznli] — недавно
\item \textsuperscript{2} roll [rɔʊl] — кататься
\item \textsuperscript{3} knee [kɪː] — колено
\item \textsuperscript{4} take a nap [næp] — заснуть
\item \textsuperscript{5} lap [læp] — колено
\end{itemize}
Old Horace drinks a lot; 
He drinks right from the pot;¹ 
His favourite drink 
Is milk, I think; 
He likes it when it's hot. 
He eats food from a can,² 
He likes it just one way; 
It doesn't last,³ 
He finishes fast, 
He eats it every day.

Chorus.

He always catches birds, 
He doesn't say a word. 
He looks at one 
And starts to run. 
He catches it for fun. 
Old Horace isn't short, 
Old Horace isn't fat.⁴ 
He's very sweet, 
He has four feet. 
Old Horace is my cat!

Chorus.

LET US READ

16 Read the story and say why Peter was sure he was going to have a nice holiday.

PETER'S HOLIDAY

Mr and Mrs Gray lived in a big city. Mr Gray worked in a bank and spent a lot of time at work. Mrs Gray was fond of music and art. The Grays had a son whose name was Peter.

¹ pot [pɒt] — горшок, котелок
² can [kæn] — консервная банка
³ last [lɑːst] — длиться
⁴ fat [fæt] — толстый, жирный
Peter was good at all the subjects at school but didn’t like to wash. He hated water.

Mr and Mrs Gray wanted to spend the summer in the country. They found a nice small house not very far from Mr Gray’s office. Mrs Gray and Peter went there one weekend at the beginning of June. Later Mr Gray wanted to join them. Peter and his mother went there for two weeks. It was late in the evening when they arrived at the house. Mrs Gray said to Peter, “We’re going to stay here for fourteen days.”

The boy ran into the house, turned on the light and looked into all the rooms. He saw a nice kitchen with a white fridge, two cupboards, a cooker and a sink. There was gas and electricity in the house. Peter also saw a vacuum cleaner in the corner. The sitting room with a tall mirror and a wonderful fireplace was fantastic. You could play football there.

Peter ran back to his mother and shouted: “Mummy! It’s great! But I haven’t found a bathroom. Where is it?” “It’s very difficult to get water here,” his mother answered, “and there is no hot and cold running water here.” “That’s very good, Mum,” Peter said. “That is going to be a very nice holiday indeed!”

Read out what modern conveniences they had in their summer cottage.
18. Look through the story (ex. 16) and say what you think of Peter.


20. Say what modern conveniences you have got in your flat (house).

21. You are sure to have a relative or a friend who lives in the country. Describe the place he lives in (room, furniture, modern conveniences).

22. Say a few words about: a) your mother’s usual working day; b) your school day.

---

**LET US WRITE**

23. Do ex. 6 and 8 in writing.

24. Make the sentences complete.

1. I fly *(usually)* to London. 2. She turns on central heating in summer *(never)*. 3. We are late *(often)*. 4. Mr Mole reads his newspaper *(every morning)*. 5. She is angry *(seldom)*. 6. My brother helps his mother clean the carpet with the vacuum cleaner *(always)*.

25. What is your choice to express the same ideas in English.

1) Нелли — медсестра. Она работает в больнице. 2) Твой брат сейчас работает в саду? — Да. Он поливает цветы. 3) Секретарь господина Грина посылает письма в Лондон каждую неделю. 4) Они не часто смотрят телевизор. 5) Что он читает? — Он читает газету. Он всегда читает ее утром. 6) Мэри чистит ковер пылесосом. Она всегда это делает по понедельникам.

26. Do ex. 11 in writing.
Learn to write these words:
electricity, gas, cold and hot running water, washing machine, vacuum cleaner, central heating, modern conveniences, to turn on (off), to be on (off)

Listening Comprehension, p. 10, text “It Is Important to Know a Foreign Language”

Home Reading Lesson 2, text “Whose Favourite Rooms Are They?”

LESSON 3
FREE TIME

hobbies and interests  radio and TV  museums, exhibitions  sports  cinema, theatre, concert

LET US REVIEW

1. Play a memory game. Look at the list of hobbies for a moment, then close the book and name all you can remember.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sports</th>
<th>writing novels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singing</td>
<td>taking pictures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dancing</td>
<td>watching TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooking</td>
<td>listening to music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travelling</td>
<td>reading fiction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>going to the theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gardening</td>
<td>collecting stamps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Read the names of the hobbies. Use your imagination and say whose hobbies they can be.

**EXAMPLE:** Mr Porter's hobby is performing on the stage.

- **watching**
  - cartoons
  - feature films
  - documentaries
  - soap operas
  - television
  - plays
  - the news
  - music
  - operas
  - modern music
  - songs

- **listening to**
  - stamps
  - coins
  - badges
  - books
  - pictures
  - fiction
  - novels
  - magazines
  - newspapers
  - stories
  - detective stories
  - spy stories
  - fiction
  - poems

- **collecting**
  - to the theatre
  - to the cinema
  - to the museum
  - to the swimming pool

- **reading**
  - taking pictures
  - performing on the stage
Say what your friends’ or relatives’ hobbies are.

**EXAMPLE:** My elder brother’s hobby is taking photos.

Say what your favourite hobby is. What were your hobbies when you were a small boy/girl?

---

**BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR**

The Past Indefinite Tense

\[ V_1/V_2 \]

yesterday, last year, last week, last Monday, last night, a week ago, a month ago, a year ago, the day before yesterday, the other day, \( \dagger \) in 1990

---

He **explained** it to me last week.
We **collected** a lot of stamps last year.
They **went** to the theatre the other day.
You **wrote** a long poem yesterday.

---

I didn’t watch TV the day before yesterday.
She **didn’t go** to the library three days ago.
You **didn’t buy** any tickets last night.
We **didn’t visit** France in 1993.

\( \dagger \) the other day — на днях
Did you read your favourite book yesterday? — Yes, I did.
Did he perform on the stage last night? — No, he didn’t.
Did they go to the museum last Thursday? — Yes, they did.
Did she understand the play? — No, she didn’t.

wh?

When did you go to the theatre last? — I went there five days ago.
Where did you meet this famous writer? — We met him in the library.
Why did he watch the film? — Because he liked it.
How many times did she visit the art gallery last month? — She did it twice.
Who read the newspaper a minute ago? — I did.
Who could answer the question? — Nobody could.

Imagine that all those actions happened in the past and tell your friends about them. Make all the necessary changes.

EXAMPLE: Nick is looking through the magazine now. Nick looked through the magazine the other day.

1. The Russian Army is winning the battle.
2. They sell newspapers only in the street.
3. The boy will appear very soon.
4. He always tells the truth.
5. The sun is rising and everything is getting so bright.
6. He gets up at five and catches the 6.30 bus.
Look at the portraits of the famous English and American writers and say what you can about them.

**Mark Twain** ['mæk twaɪn] (1835-1910) lived in the state of Missouri on the banks of the Mississippi. He wrote about Tom Sawyer began to work at the age of 12 was a sailor became famous in 1865 was a short story writer and the greatest American humorist was fond of collecting things which nobody had.

**James Hadly Chase** ['kɛɪmz hædli ˈʃɛɪz] (1906-1985) was born in London began to write in 1939 became famous in 1939 worked as a bookseller wrote 78 books.

**Agatha Christie** ['æɡəθə ˈkristi] (1890-1976) didn’t go to school got her education at home took part in the war of 1914 got married in 1914 began to write detective stories in 1920 became famous in 1926 wrote 68 novels, 17 plays, more than a hundred stories.
William Shakespeare (1564-1616) lived in Stratford-on-Avon, went to a grammar school, worked as an actor, acted at the London theatre called "The Globe," wrote about 37 plays and many poems, wrote in the golden age of English literature.

Jack London (1876-1916) was a son of a farmer, had a lot of jobs, worked as a newspaper seller, a sailor, a factory workers, dreamed of becoming a pirate, wrote his first book in 1898, wrote novels and stories about animals, lived in Alaska for some years, wrote 152 stories about the North.

Answer the questions (see ex. 6).

1. When was William Shakespeare born?
2. What was James Chase's native city?
3. Where was Mark Twain from?
4. When did Agatha Christie become famous? What about James Chase and Mark Twain?
5. Which of them was an actor? a sailor? a seller?
6. How many novels did Agatha Christie write?
7. Which of them dreamed of becoming a pirate?
8. Which of them was the greatest American humorist? the greatest English writer?

1 factory [ˈfæktə] — фабрика, завод
9. Which of them wrote in the golden age of English literature?
10. Which of them took part in the war of 1914?
11. How did Agatha Christie get her education?

Here are the answers. Ask questions about the famous writers. (See ex. 6, 7.)

**William Shakespeare**

1) He lived in Stratford-on-Avon.
2) He acted in "The Globe".
3) He wrote in the golden age of English literature.

**Agatha Christie**

1) In 1890.
2) She got married in 1914.
3) She wrote more than a hundred stories.

**Jack London**

1) His father was a farmer.
2) He had a lot of jobs.
3) He wrote stories about animals.

Do you know any books by these writers? Name them. If you can't, go to the library or look through your home collection of books and be ready to give the titles ['taitlz]. If you can, say a few words about any of these books.

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>[ˈpjeɪnəʊ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gallery</td>
<td>[ˈgæləri]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sculpture</td>
<td>[ˈskʌlptʃə]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biography</td>
<td>[bəˈraɪəɡrəfi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>[ʃəʊ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guitar</td>
<td>[ˈɡɪtər]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio</td>
<td>[ˈreɪdiəʊ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classical</td>
<td>[ˈklæsɪkl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revue</td>
<td>[rɪˈvjuː]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>video</td>
<td>[ˈvɪdɪəʊ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drama</td>
<td>[ˈdræmə]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics</td>
<td>[ˈpɒlɪtɪks]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

- flute
- violin
- paint
- painting
- exhibition
- to go in for (sports)
- folk
c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

His nephew is fond of playing the guitar and the piano but he dislikes playing the violin and the flute. By the way, he likes to paint very much.

My elder brother is a theatre-goer. He is fond of watching comedies, ballet and drama performances and video films.

Would you like to go to a pop music concert or to a concert of classical music?

How often do you visit exhibitions, picture galleries and art museums? When does the Tretyakov Gallery open? Do you know when it closes? It opens at 10 and closes at 7.

Where could I find Agatha Christie's biography? Who has written the biography of this famous actress?

We could see beautiful sculptures and wonderful paintings in the Museum of Fine Arts. — Can we find any portrait paintings in the National Gallery in London? — Certainly you can.

My grandfather’s hobbies are politics, listening to the radio and watching ice revues. My uncle always discusses politics and watches different TV programmes.

What are they showing on TV tonight? Oh, there are a lot of interesting programmes: folk and classical music, an ice revue and the quiz of the day.

What sports do your friends go in for? Richard goes in for swimming and running and Michael goes in for skiing and skating.

---

Listen to the new words, 11. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

a piano, a guitar, a gallery, a sculpture, a biography, a show, politics, radio, classical, revue, video, a flute, a violin, to paint, a painting, an exhibition, to go in for sports, folk
LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

to play the piano  to play football
to play the guitar  to play tennis
to play the violin  but:  to play hockey
         to play the flute  to play chess
         
to go in for sports
         to go in for running
         to go in for skiing
         to go in for skating
         to go in for swimming

12 Say what games the children played at the sports ground three days ago and what musical instruments some of them played after classes.

EXAMPLE: Mary and Pete (basketball).
Mary and Pete played basketball at the sports ground three days ago.

1. The children (volleyball).
2. Mary (piano).
3. Nelly and Victor (badminton).
5. Caroline (violin).
6. The boys (hockey).

13 Say what kinds of sports your friends or your relatives go in for.

EXAMPLE: My younger brother goes in for jumping.

LET US READ AND LEARN

14 Listen to the dialogue, 12. Read it and act it out.

Tom: Where shall we go tonight?
Kate: As you know, Tom, I'm a cinema-goer. I would like to go to the cinema. What's on at the "Odeon" [ɔdjan]?
Tom: “Hamlet” is on.
Kate: Who is playing Hamlet?
Tom: I don’t know. It’s an old film. I think it’s black-and-white.
Kate: Oh, no. Let’s go to some exhibition instead. I know they are showing an interesting collection of sculptures in the National Gallery.
Tom: Isn’t it too late? When does it close?
Kate: It closes at 5. We’ll be there just in time. Hurry up!

Think of your own dialogue (use ex. 14 as a model). Choose a partner and act it out. Don’t forget to change over.


THE CIRCUS CLOWN

He arrived in the spring;
He smiled at everyone;
He played with all the children;
They danced in the sun.

He whispered2 in their ears;
They laughed at his games;
They loved to hear his stories;
He learned all their names.

Chorus:
They cried yesterday;
He travelled to another town;
They called him, but he walked away...
He was the circus clown.

He dressed in funny clothes;
His favourite shirt was red;
He did his hair and put his hat
On top of his round head.

1 circus ['s3:kas] — цирк: цирковой
2 whisper ['wispers] — шептать
The children liked his shoes;  
They touched his giant [ˈʃaɪənt] feet;  
They followed him, applauded [əˈplɔːd] him,  
And marched in the street.

**Chorus.**

They visited his tent;  
They waited every day;  
They repeated everything he did;  
They wanted him to play.

---

**LET US READ**

17 Read the text and say if Uncle Oscar was happy.

**WHATEVER HAPPENED TO UNCLE OSCAR?**

*(after George P. Mc Callum)*

**Part I**

I would like to tell you what happened to my Uncle Oscar,  
or I would rather try to understand it and explain it to you.

My Uncle Oscar was a very nice man. Every morning on  
Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday he usually  
took the seven forty-five (7.45) bus and started for work.  
He went to the bank early in the morning as he was an account-  
ant¹ (and by the way, a very good one). He worked hard all day  
long and returned home rather late. My uncle was forty-seven  
years old, married and had two children.

14. His wife’s name was Agatha. Aunt Agatha was fond of  
talking and always talked too much and in a very loud voice.  
That’s why I think Uncle Oscar seldom had much to say. Their  
two children, Elizabeth and Julian, were not very pleasant. Both  
of them were large and loud like their mother. And they were  
selfish² and greedy³ too. They didn’t think about their father

¹ accountant [əˈkaʊntənt] — бухгалтер  
² selfish [ˈselɪʃ] — эгоистичный  
³ greedy [ˈgrɛdi] — жадный
much. He was a little quiet man, who spoke little and went about unnoticed. He liked music but didn’t play the piano, the violin, the flute or any other musical instrument. He practically never went to the theatre or to the cinema and he didn’t visit exhibitions or museums either.

Uncle Oscar didn’t go in for sports. He was not fond of swimming, skiing or playing golf. You could never see him in the sitting room in front of the television watching sports programmes. Uncle Oscar never complained about his boring life. I knew he had a hobby. He had a very good collection of stamps and was happy only when he worked on his stamp collection. He was a real collector. His children took no interest in their father’s hobby. But I, his nephew, did. Uncle Oscar showed me some stamps and explained that they were really very expensive.

Then on the 14th of October 1951 Uncle Oscar got up as usual at 6.45 (six forty-five), made his own breakfast (Aunt Agatha, Elizabeth and Julian were still in bed; they never got up before 8), left the house and went to the bus stop. Some people who were at the bus stop that day didn’t see him at all. The others were not so sure. They couldn’t say anything definite. But that was the kind of person Uncle Oscar was. Other people seldom noticed him. One thing was certain: he never got to the bank that morning.

1 unnoticed [ən'nəʊst] — незаметный
2 complained [kəmp'leind] — жаловался
16
Answer the following questions.

1. Who is the narrator of the story?
2. How many members were there in Uncle Oscar’s family?
3. How old was Uncle Oscar?
4. What was his job?
5. Who talked a lot in his family? Who was always quiet?
6. Do you think Uncle Oscar’s children loved their father? Why?
7. What was Uncle Oscar’s hobby?
8. Why was Uncle Oscar’s life boring?
9. Uncle Oscar didn’t go in for sports, did he?
10. Where did Uncle Oscar go on the 14th of October? Did he get there?

LET US TALK

19 Say what you think of:
   a) Uncle Oscar;
   b) his wife;
   c) his children;
   d) the kind of life Uncle Oscar led.

20 Tell your classmates what happened to Uncle Oscar on the 14th of October.

21 What do you think the end of the story is? Tell it to your classmates.

22 Do you want to know what the real end of the story by George P. McCallum is? Then read Lesson 3 in your “English Reader V”.

23 Uncle Oscar’s hobby was collecting stamps. What about other people’s hobbies? Say whose hobbies they are and describe them in the most detailed way.

   a) visiting museums, exhibitions, galleries;
   b) playing the piano (the violin, the guitar);

1 narrator [nə’reɪtə] — рассказчик
c) going in for sports;
d) painting;
e) listening to the radio, watching TV;
f) watching video films;
g) visiting jazz concerts.

24 Choose a partner and ask him questions about any famous person you like.

25 Speak about your last visit to a museum (picture gallery, exhibition, etc.). The following plan can help you.
1) where you went;
2) when it was;
3) why you chose it;
4) who you went there with;
5) what you saw there;
6) when you arrived there;
7) how you arrived there;
8) what were the opening hours;
9) how interesting it was;
10) when you returned home;
11) when you are going there again.

26 Ask your friend about his/her last visit to the cinema (concert, theatre, circus, etc.).

27 Answer the following questions and get ready to speak about sports in your life.
1. Do you like sports?
2. What are your favourite sports and games?
3. When did you begin going in for sports?
4. What sport was it?
5. Do you like to play games in the ground or do you just like sports programmes on television?
6. How good are you at sports?
LET US WRITE

28 Answer the following questions.

EXAMPLE: 1. Who often goes to the museum?
   — My little cousins do.
2. Who went to the ballet the other day?
   — Our family did.

1. Who goes in for sports in your group?
2. Who likes to go to different exhibitions?
3. Who is listening to the opera now?
4. Who is interested in politics?
5. Who will go to the concert next week?
6. Who can play the guitar?
7. Who must learn this poem by heart?
8. What museum has got a good collection of sculptures?

29 Do ex. 25 in writing.

30 Write questions for more information.
   He visited it.

31 Learn to write these words.

flute, violin, piano, guitar, exhibition, paint, painting, folk, circus, sculpture, to go in for sports

Listening Comprehension, 15, text “The British Museum”

Home Reading Lesson 3, text “Whatever Happened to Uncle Oscar?”, part II
LESSON 4

TRAVELLING

weather, seasons, nature
arrival, departure, luggage
transport
moving about the city
hotels

LET US REVIEW

1. Look at the picture, say how people can travel and answer the following questions.

arrival [əˈrɛvl] — приезд, прибытие
departure [dɪˈpɑːtʃə] — отъезд, отправление
1. Which is the quickest way of travelling?
2. Which is the most comfortable?
3. Which is the cheapest and which is the most expensive?
4. Which way of travelling is the most convenient?
5. Which one is the most interesting?

Imagine that you are talking to Mr Smith who travelled to India by plane last year. Ask him questions about his journey. The words can help you.

a business trip, a tourist trip, to arrive at the airport, much/little luggage, to buy a single (return) ticket, business/tourist class, cheap, expensive, to catch a flight, on the plane, How much time did it take you to ...?

Here are Alice's answers. Pretend you are John, think of his questions to her and write them down.

**John:** Was your trip good?
**Alice:** It was fantastic!

**John:** Did you see the sea?
**Alice:** Yes, we did. We spent some days at the seaside and then we went to the mountains.

**John:** By train.
**Alice:** Yes, it was a train. It was a through train, so we didn’t change.

**John:** Was it fast?
**Alice:** Yes, it was a fast train. We got to our hotel very quickly.

**John:** How was your room there?
**Alice:** We stayed there for 4 days.

**John:** Was it a double?
**Alice:** No, it was a single.

**John:** What was the weather like?
**Alice:** It was wonderful, sometimes a bit windy and cold, but usually very pleasant and sunny.

Act out the dialogue of ex. 3. Don't forget to change over.

Complete the text filling in the words and word combinations.
a single, by sea, weather, ticket, on board the ship, wind,
tourist class, by plane, expensive, trip, voyage

Last summer Mike's elder brother had a very interesting ... . He went to New York ... . He travelled ... . The ... was fantastic. The sky was blue. There was no ... . All the passengers enjoyed the voyage.

My ... was not very ... as it was .... . I had ... as I wanted to get back to London ... .

Use the text of ex. 5 as a model and tell the class a few words about somebody's journey.

---

**BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR**

The Present Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have/has + V&lt;sub&gt;e/d&lt;/sub&gt;/V&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

already, just, yet, never, ever, lately, recently, this morning, this evening, this week, this month, this year, today since, for

```
I have bought a return ticket for Paris.
She has just flown to New York.
They have missed their flight this morning.
I have known Mrs Ford since 1994.
He has already been to London for three days.
```

```
I haven't got my luggage yet.
We haven't arrived at the railway station.
```

---

lately ['leɪti] — недавно, за последнее время (за последние дни, недели)
He has never been to America.
I haven’t heard from him for a long time.
We haven’t seen her for ages.

Have you ever stayed at the hotel?
Has he found his luggage yet?
Have they explained everything to you yet?
How long have you been here?
What cities have you visited yet?
Who has been to Moscow recently? — I have.

7 Fill in the missing forms of the verbs.

think ...

s...

sit ...

have ...

say ...

read ...

tell ...

wear ...

fill in the blank with past participle:
drank ...

lost ...

heard ...

found ...

flown ...

gave ...

taken ...

understood ...

got ...

forgotten ...

8 Make the sentences complete filling in: just, yet, already, never, ever, recently, lately.

1. He has ...

been to Canada.
2. Have you had a holiday ...?
3. Have they ... eaten at the new café?
4. I haven’t heard from my cousin ... .
5. Have you seen any good performances ...?
6. Have they called you ...? No, they haven’t called me ....
7. He has ... been to the Tretyakov Gallery.

Ask questions using:
to play tennis recently; to get an excellent mark lately;
to buy a new textbook lately; to hear from the grandparents recently; to travel recently; to work hard lately.

Look at the list of things to do and say what Susan has already done and what she hasn’t done yet.

**THINGS TO DO!**

1. Buy the ticket to Boston.
2. Take the books to the library.
3. Make lunch.
4. Write a letter to Granny.
5. Give a call to Betty.
6. Send a telegramme to Daddy.
7. Swim in the pool.
8. Read the novel up to the end.
9. Drink the milk.

Read the beginning of the sentences in A and find the correct ending in B.

A

1) Tom is happy because
2) Becky is proud because
3) Nelly is interested because
4) Fred is in bed because
5) Mary’s dress is clean because

B

a) he hasn’t won the prize.
b) he has flown to Paris with his Dad.
c) he has fallen ill.
d) he has fallen over on the ground.
e) she has been to many countries.
6) Paul’s shirt is dirty because
7) Richard is sad because
f) she hasn’t read the story up to the end.
g) she has washed it.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

I have always wanted to come here.
I have always lived in this street.
They have always had that address.
We have always known them.
She has always been interested in cartoons.
He has always spoken good English.

12 Look, read and compare.

1. I always visit my granny on Saturday.
2. He always flies to Riga.
3. She always speaks English in class.
4. They always travel with a lot of luggage.
5. We always travel second class.

1. I have always had this book.
2. He has always wanted to visit Riga.
3. She has always spoken fantastic English.
4. They have always been proud of their Motherland.
5. We have always travelled by train.

13 What is your choice to express the same ideas in English?

1) Они всегда жили в этом городе. 2) Они всегда покупают обратные билеты. 3) Он всегда фотографирует, когда путешествует. 4) Она всегда знала этого фотографа. 5) Мы всегда хотели побывать в Париже. 6) Моя приятельница всегда жила в Париже. 7) У меня всегда был альбом с марками. 8) Я всегда собирал марки. 9) Я всегда берете с собой мало багажа. 10) Я всегда гордился своими родителями.
These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:
   a fast train [ˈfast ˈtreɪn], information [ɪnˈfərmeɪʃn], camera [ˈkæmərə], a slow train [ˈsloʊ ˈtreɪn], traveller [ˈtrævər], passport control [ˈpɑːspɔrt kɑːntrəʊl]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:
   arrival, departure, check-in, to check in, fare, customs, customs officer, booking office, to book

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

   I always travel by fast trains, but my granny is fond of slow trains. Can you tell me where the information office is? — You can get the information about the bus timetable here. Is this your camera? Are you fond of taking pictures? A traveller is one who travels. When you leave London for Moscow you must go through the passport control. The reporters waited for the arrival of the President. We hope for the arrival of better news. What do you know about his departure? I checked my luggage in in London. Where shall we check in? When you arrive in a country you should go through the Customs. It took us an hour to get our luggage through the Customs. The customs officers at the airport were very polite. You can buy tickets for concerts, shows and other performances in the booking office at the theatre; you buy tickets to go by train in the booking office at the railway station. Father booked a single room and a double at the hotel before we left on our trip. What's the fare from London to Paris? Conductor:¹ Fares, please!

Listen to the new words, 14 16. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

---
¹ a conductor [ˈkənˈdəktər] — кондуктор

a fast train, a slow train, information, a traveller, a camera, passport control, an arrival, a departure, check-in, to check in, the customs, a customs officer, a booking office, to book, fare
Look at pictures 1–7. What is happening in each of them? Where is the action taking place?
Look, Read and Remember!

- sun — sunny
- wind — windy
- cloud — cloudy
- rain — rainy
- snow — snowy
- fog — foggy

Let Us Read and Learn

17 Listen to the dialogue, and say for how long Mrs Brown is going to stay, what kind of room she wants and why she is interested in the car park.

18 Listen to the dialogue, and read it aloud after the speaker.

Mrs Brown: Excuse me, I'm looking for a hotel to stay at. What would you recommend?
Information Clerk: How long are you going to stay?
Mrs Brown: Two or three nights, I think. Could you, please, look for some hotel near the centre?
Information Clerk: Yes, Madam, naturally. Is it a single room you want?
Mrs Brown: No, a double room, please. My husband is joining me.
Information Clerk: Would you like to have your own bathroom?
Mrs Brown: Yes, of course.
Information Clerk: Right. Now can I offer you New Barbican, Madam? It is a modern hotel, comfortably furnished. All rooms have radio, telephone and a colour TV set.
Mrs Brown: Thank you, but I'm touring here. Is the hotel...

1 to stay at (in) a hotel — остановиться в гостинице
2 comfortably furnished [tɛsˈfɜːndɪd] — уютно обставленный
3 to tour [tʊə] — совершать путешествие, поездку, турне
far from the main sights\(^1\) of the city? Where exactly\(^2\) is it?

Information Clerk: In Central Street, Madam. It is not far from the Tower of London and Tower Bridge. You can easily walk to St. Paul’s from it. It will take you 20 minutes to get to the heart of the City of London.

Mrs Brown: How much does it cost?

Information Clerk: It is 40 pounds per person per night.\(^3\)

Mrs Brown: Fine, fine, that will do... Oh, yes, one more thing. Is there a car park? My husband is bringing his car.

Information Clerk: Yes, the hotel has its own car park.

---

Listen to the song “Rules and Regulations”.\(^4\)

RULES AND REGULATIONS

Don’t move, don’t talk.
Never run, always walk.
Give way, wait a minute,
Going to be trouble,\(^5\) you’re in it.

---

1 the sights [səts] — достопримечательности
2 exactly [ɪgˈzæktli] — точно
3 40 pounds per person per night — 40 фунтов с человека за ночь
4 regulations [rɪˈɡreɪʃənz] — инструкции
5 trouble [ˈtrʌbl] — беспокойство
No waiting, no parking,
Don't smile, stop laughing.
Turn it on, turn it off,
Open your mouth, try to cough.\footnote{cough [kɒf] — кашлять}

\textit{Chorus:} Rules and regulations...
Laws\footnote{law [lɔː] — закон} and obligations\footnote{obligation [əˈblɪɡeɪʃən] — обязательство}...
You must do this, you can’t do that.
Rules and regulations.

Parking meters, railway stations,
Seaports, airports.
You mustn’t steal — don’t get caught.
Laws and obligations.

No smoking,\footnote{smoke [smoʊk] — курить} no drinking,
No running, stop thinking.
Work all day, play all night,
Do what I say — that’s right.

Turn left, turn right,
Always love, never fight.
Come early, don’t be late,
Try to be good, don’t hate.

\textit{Chorus.}

\section*{LET US READ}

\footnotesize{20} Read the story and say why Mr Kirk has bought his new friend a hat.

\textbf{MY FRIEND IS AN ALIEN\textsuperscript{5}}

\textit{(after Peter and Karen Viney)}

Mr Kirk was in the park with his dog one Sunday night. Suddenly he heard a noise and saw a strange person in front
of him. It was Zardak, from the planet Vecon [věkn]. Zardak came to London by air. But he didn’t arrive at the airport, he didn’t check in, he didn’t pass the passport control or the customs.

Mr Kirk took him home, but he didn’t tell anybody about Zardak’s arrival. Zardak liked Mr Kirk, and they became friends. But Zardak was tired of Mr Kirk’s flat. He wanted to travel about Mr Kirk’s country or at least he wanted to make a tour of the city.

19. Zardak: Well, my good friend. When can we go out and see your city?

Mr Kirk: Er... that’s difficult, Zardak. It isn’t a very good idea.

Zardak: But I’ve been here for two days and I haven’t seen anything yet.

Mr Kirk: You’ve watched television.

Zardak: I can watch television from my starship or when I am at home on planet Vecon. Please, my friend.

Mr Kirk: I’ve already told you. It isn’t a good idea.

But Zardak wants to go on a tour of London. He is fond of travelling. He has travelled a lot. Travelling is his hobby. Just because of his hobby he has come to the planet Earth.

Zardak has got little silver horns\(^1\) on his head. With the help of these horns he can make people do\(^2\) what he likes. His horns become bright green and the light coming from them makes everybody say and do what Zardak wants. So Zardak just looks at Mr Kirk. Mr Kirk sees the green light and says:

Mr Kirk: Oh, I agree. Let’s go to the city centre. Really why don’t we go out? I have bought you a coat and a hat. Please put them on.


Mr Kirk: All right. I’ll wear one too.

Mr Kirk and Zardak go along the street to the bus stop. At the traffic lights they meet Mrs Evans, an old neighbour of Mr Kirk.

\(^1\) horn [hɔrn] — horn

\(^2\) he can make people do — он может заставить людей делать
Mrs Evans: Hello, Mr Kirk. I'm so glad to meet you. Who is this young man?
Mr Kirk: He's my cousin from California. His name is Zardak.
Mrs Evans: Oh! How do you do? How long have you been here?
Mr Kirk: He has been here since Thursday. He has been here for two days.
Mrs Evans: What do you think of England, Zardak? Is it your first visit to the country?
Zardak: Yes, it is. I have never been here before. It's very nice.
Mrs Evans: And I like your country very much. I've been there three times, you know. My sister lives in Los Angeles in California. She has always wanted to live there. And where exactly do you live?
Zardak: Vекон.
Mrs Evans: I've never heard of that. Where...
Mr Kirk: It's a very small town. Very small.
Mrs Evans: Funny, you haven't got an American accent. Mr Kirk (looking at his watch): Oh, dear! Is that the time?
Well, goodbye, Mrs Evans. We are really in a hurry.
Mrs Evans: Goodbye. Nice to meet you.

21 Agree or disagree.

1. Zardak arrived in London on Thursday.
2. Zardak lives in California.
3. Zardak has never been to the Earth. It is his first visit.
4. Mrs Evans has never heard of Vекон.
5. Vекон is a very small town in the USA.
6. Zardak hasn't got an American accent.
7. Mr Kirk and Zardak are really in a hurry.
8. Mrs Evans has been to California several times.

22 Let's discuss the text. Think and answer the questions. Use as many sentences as you can.

1. Where did Mr Kirk meet Zardak?
2. What have you learnt about Zardak from the text?
3. Has Zardak seen anything of London yet? Why?
4. Why do you think Mr Kirk bought Zardak a hat?
5. How could Zardak make Mr Kirk agree to walk to the city centre?
6. Who has explained to Mrs Evans what Vecon is? Why?
7. Did Mr Kirk tell Mrs Evans the truth? Why?
8. What do you think Mrs Evans wanted to ask Zardak when she said: “I have never heard of that. Where...”?
9. Why did Mr Kirk want to finish their talk? How did he do it?

Imagine that you are Mr Kirk. You want to show Zardak London. Where will you take him? What are you going to tell him about these places?

LET US TALK


1. Do you often travel? When did you travel last?
2. Where did you go?
3. How did you go there? Was it by car, by bus, by train or by plane?
4. Which is the quickest means\(^1\) of travelling? Which is the most comfortable?
5. How do people usually travel if they want to get to the farthest places on the earth?
6. Do you think it is interesting to travel by sea? Have you ever done it? What was the weather like then?
7. How often do your parents or relatives travel by air? Where do they usually buy tickets for the flight? Is it expensive to travel by plane? Why do many people prefer this way of travelling?
8. What do people usually do when they are on the plane? on the train? on the bus?
10. Where do people stay as they travel to faraway places? Have you ever stayed at a hotel? What was it like? What were the rooms like? What was the food like?

\(^{1}\) means [\text{miːnz}] — спосо́б
25. Look at the pictures and say what the weather is (was, has been) like in these cities.

- Moscow, now
- London, yesterday
- New York, since Monday
- Paris, since the 5th of October

**LET US WRITE**

26. Write the answers. (See ex. 20.)

1. Who was in the park one night?
2. Who came from the planet Vecon?
3. Who took Zardak home?
4. Who hasn’t seen anything of the Earth yet?
5. Who can watch television from his starship?
6. Who wants to make a tour about London?
7. Who lives in Los Angeles?
8. Who has lived there for 20 years?
9. Who is in a hurry?

You know the words a star and a ship. Do you remember them? What does the word starship mean? What does city centre mean? Follow the models and form the words. Check up the spelling in the vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bed</td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire</td>
<td>port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sea</td>
<td>place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>railway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>single</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>station</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28 Make sentences about the people.

**EXAMPLE:** Peter is a butcher.
(sell a lot of meat)
He has sold a lot of meat.

1. Mr Nelson is an architect.
(build some modern cottages)
2. Mr Kirk is a baker.
(become famous for his wonderful bread)
3. Nelly is fond of painting.
(draw funny pictures of animals)
4. Jack is a postman.
(bring me so many letters and magazines)
5. Angela is bad at mathematics.
(not learn how to add well)
6. Steve is so ill now.
(not feel so bad since his operation)

29 Describe your last trip (journey, voyage, tour). Don’t forget to write a few words about the weather at the time.
Learn to write these words.

arrival, departure, to check in (check-in), customs, customs officer, to book, booking office, fare

Listening Comprehension, 20, text “Denis Cook Is Travelling”

Home Reading Lesson 4, text “A Letter from Yaroslavl”

LESSON 5

SO MANY COUNTRIES, SO MANY CUSTOMS (RUSSIA, BRITAIN, THE USA)

history main cities symbols famous people

LETS US REVIEW

1 Put the following words into the correct category: parts of the city/places of interest/places to work/money.

road, factory, rouble [ˈruːbl], exhibition, street, nickel, tower, shop, quarter, park, square, gallery, hospital, penny, airport, museum, bridge, pound, seaport, band, church, railway station, monument, dime, dollar
2. Name at least five places in Moscow, in London, in Washington or New York where you would like to take your friend.

3. We hope you remember such places of interest in London as: Trafalgar Square, the British Museum, Hyde Park. Try and answer the following questions about these places.

1. What is the centre of London?
2. Where is the National Gallery situated?
3. What do you know about the British Museum?
4. Which is the largest park in London?
5. What is there in the middle of Trafalgar Square?

4. This is the flag of Great Britain. The British people call it "the Union Jack". It is red, white and blue. Do you remember the Russian and the American national flags? Describe them and draw them in your notebooks.

5. Look at the pictures and say in what countries these buildings and places are. Which of them can you describe as symbols of: a) Russia; b) Britain; c) the USA?
Do you remember any facts about the Russian, American and British history? Then answer the following questions.

a) Russia.

1. Which is the largest country in the world?
2. Where is Russia situated?
3. What is the longest river in Russia?
4. What old Russian towns on the Volga do you know?
5. Who founded the capital of Russia? When?
6. What is the heart of Moscow?
7. What can you say about the birch tree?
b) Britain.
1. When did England become a great country?
2. When did William the Conqueror come to England from France? What do you know about him?
4. When was the Great Fire of London?
5. Did the people of London build a new city after the fire?
6. What can you say about the capital of England at the end of the 20th century?

c) The USA.
1. Who discovered America?
2. What was the name of the ship that sailed from England to America?
3. Were there any women on board the “Mayflower”?
4. Who was the first president of the United States?
5. How many states are there in the United States?
6. What is the capital of the USA?

---

**BRUSHUP YOUR GRAMMAR**

The Future Indefinite Tense (Future Simple)

shall/will + V

tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next Monday, next January, next day, next week, next month, next year, in a few days

I’m sure Tom will be a good architect.
I’m twelve now. I’ll be thirteen next year.
He says he’ll always remember our school.
Nick has left for Kursk. He won't be at the party. I shan't see you next week. My parents won't agree with this idea.

Will you join us the day after tomorrow? Shall I phone you later? Will they buy the textbook?

Where will you go next summer? When will they give us their answer? Why won't you send them your plan? Who will win? I hope Helen will.

This is not the only way to speak about future in English. When we talk about our plans and things we have decided to do, we often use to be going to...

to be going to...

\[ +/- \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am/am not</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>are/aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He, She, It</td>
<td>is/isn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>are/aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>are/aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>are/aren't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Am I going to...? Is he, she, it going to...? Are we, you, they going to...?
7 You and your friend are going to start a pop group. Complete these sentences about who is going to do what.

**EXAMPLE:** Nick/be/a singer.
Nick is going to be a singer.

1. I/play/the piano.
2. Mary/play/the guitar.
3. John/learn to play/the violin.
5. My father/pay/for the instruments.
6. Tim/organize /outr concerts.
7. We/become/famous.

8 Find out what Mrs Brown is telling her son. Use will (’ll) or won’t.

One day you... be a parent. You... have children. They... think you’re old. They... listen to you. They... like the things you like. They... laugh at you. And you... like it. You!!! You... understand it! You!!! think they’re too young. You... think you’re right. It’ll be the same thing. So, please do what I say.

Do you think the son will do what his mother asks him to? What about you?

9 Make the sentences complete using will/shall or be going to...

**EXAMPLE:** I like it when you play the guitar. ... you play and sing for us?
I like it when you play the guitar. Will you play and sing for us?

1. The latest news is on now. I... to watch TV.
2. I have bought two tickets for the new opera. I... to the Bolshoi Theatre with my mother.
3. When... you visit New York?
4. What... you to do tonight?
5. He hasn’t decided yet where he... work next month.
6. She wants to go to Moscow alone, so she... to take her little cousin with her.
There are three main ways of talking about the future in English. Two of them you already know. (See “Brush up Your Grammar”.) But you can also use the present continuous tense to talk about your plans or things you have decided to do, especially with the verbs to go, to come, to arrive, to move, to leave, to have.

I’m travelling to Rome tomorrow. = I’m going to travel to Rome tomorrow.
Jill is not coming with us. = Jill is not going to come with us.
When are you leaving for Washington DC? = When are you going to leave for Washington DC?
We are having a party next Saturday night. Who is coming? = We are going to have a party next Saturday night. Who is going to come?

Express the same idea in another way.

EXAMPLE: He is going to have a meeting at 10 o’clock tomorrow.
He is having a meeting at 10 o’clock tomorrow.

1. The plane is going to arrive half an hour later.
2. My friends are going to come to Moscow for the weekend.
3. My grandparents are going to move into a new flat next week.
4. When are they going to arrive?
5. She is going to leave for St. Petersburg in two days.

Look at the table and, using your imagination and the present continuous tense, say who, when and what is going to do.
**EXAMPLE:** Jane is arriving in Moscow at 5.30 tomorrow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arriving</th>
<th>Leaving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) Jane, 5.30</td>
<td>1) She, for the airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) Jill, next Monday</td>
<td>2) Bob, Moscow, at 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) Fred and Bill, tomorrow</td>
<td>3) The Browns, for London</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coming</th>
<th>Moving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) Elizabeth, to Paris</td>
<td>1) into a new flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) George’s parents, next Friday</td>
<td>2) to her summer cottage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) They, 7.15</td>
<td>3) to the country house</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Having</th>
<th>Going</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) We, a party</td>
<td>1) The Greens, away, next month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) They, a concert</td>
<td>2) He, to Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) The engineers, a conference</td>
<td>3) We, to India, in 5 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

1) fact [fækɪ]  
role [rəʊl]  
legend ['lɛdʒənd]  
rocket ['rɒkɪt]  
tradition [trə'dɪʃən]  

2) plantator [plænt'teɪtə]  
conservative [kən'sɜ:vətɪv]  
president ['prɛzɪdənt]  
academician [æk'ædemɪʃən]  
university ['ju:nɪvəsətɪ]

2) Arkhangelsk [ɑː'kɒŋɡɛlsk]  
Moscow University ['mʌskəu jʊ'nɪvɜːsɪtɪ]  
the Pacific Ocean [ðə pæsɪfɪk 'əʊʃən]  
Australia ['ɒstrəliə]  
James Cook [ˈdʒeɪmz 'kʊk]  
George Washington [ˈdʒɔːɡə wɒʃɪŋtən]  
Virginia [və'ʤɪnɪə]  
Scotland [ˈskɔtland]  
Wales [weɪlz]
b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

- caviar
- custom
- honey
- hope
- pancake
- sour cream
- science
- scientist
- scientific
- village
- space
- spaceship

c) Read the word combinations and sentences to know how to use these words.

Many people think that caviar is the national food of Russian people. Caviar has become very expensive now.

Some people eat pancakes with caviar, some of them like pancakes with sour cream or honey. I am not sure he is fond of sour cream.

Do you know any interesting American customs?

Traditions and customs are different in Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

Is it going to snow? — I hope so.

Is it going to rain? — I hope not. Let’s hope for the best.

The 20th century is the century of science.

When he was a student at Moscow University he was fond of sciences.

A person who knows much about a science is a scientist. M. Lomonosov was a great Russian scientist. What famous British scientists do you know?

S. Korolev’s scientific theories and discoveries have changed a lot in the world of science.

The planet Earth and everything and everyone on it are in space. Yuri Gagarin, the famous Russian cosmonaut, was the first man in the world to have a voyage in space.

Yuri Gagarin made a space voyage around the world on board the spaceship “Vostok” on the 12th of April, 1961.
Who was the first man to walk in space? The Russian cosmonaut Alexey Leonov was.

A village is a small group of houses in the country. James Cook, a great English discoverer and traveller was born in a small village.

Listen to the new words, 21. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

Group one: Arkhangelsk, Moscow University, the Pacific Ocean, Australia, Virginia, Scotland, Wales, Northern Ireland, James Cook, George Washington, Guy Fawkes’ Day.

Group two: caviar, a custom, honey, to hope, a pancake, sour cream, science, a scientist, scientific, a village, space, a spaceship.

Look at the pictures and name in English the food you see in them.

Choose two possible answers to the questions:

1. What is the traditional Russian food?
   a) pancakes with caviar; b) pancakes with honey; c) pancakes with sour cream.

2. What is the traditional American food?
   a) roast turkey; b) roast chicken; c) hamburgers.

3. What is the traditional British food?
   a) porridge; b) bacon and eggs; c) tea with lemon.
Say what the names for the following are:

- eggs of large fishes;
- the food people in Russia usually eat during Maslenitsa week;
- a small group of houses in the country, which is not a settlement and is smaller than a town;
- a ship which travels in space;
- a person who knows much about a science;
- systematic knowledge.

Look at the portraits of the Russian, English and American people and say what you can about them.

was born in the Kholmogory settlement near the city of Arkhangelsk. Father was a seaman. Started to study at the age of 19. Became the first Russian Academician [əˈkædəmɪk] at the age of 33. Founded Moscow University in 1755. A great scientist. Made a lot of discoveries in different fields of science. A monument to M. Lomonosov is in Moscow.

was born in a small village near the city of Smolensk. Was interested in planes, spaceships, rockets. Became the first world cosmonaut at the age of 27. Flew into space on the 12th of April, 1961 on board the spaceship "Vostok". The monument to Y. Gagarin is in Moscow in Gagarin Square.
was born in an English village, father was a poor farmer, became a seaman, traveller and discoverer, made three voyages around the world, discovered a lot of islands in the Pacific Ocean [ˈpəʊsɪflɪk ˈæ网站地图], explored the eastern coast\(^1\) of Australia.

was born in America, state of Virginia, a son of a rich plantator, became an American general at the age of 43, took part in the War of Independence (1775-1783) against Britain, fought many battles, won a lot of battles in the War of Independence, the first US President (1789-1797).

---

18 Answer the questions (see ex. 17).

1. When was Lomonosov born?
2. Who was the first Russian cosmonaut? Who was the first man to walk in space?
3. Who was the first Russian Academician?
4. When did Lomonosov found Moscow University?
5. Where was Gagarin from and what was he interested in?
6. What was James Cook?
7. How many voyages around the world did he make?
8. What did James Cook discover?
9. Who was the first US President?
10. In what battles did Washington take part?

\(^1\) a coast [ˈkɔʊst] — побережье
19 Listen to the poem "A Question", and read it. Then learn it by heart.

A QUESTION
(by Edith Segal)

Some people live in the country
Where the houses are very small.
Some people live in the city,
Where the houses are very tall.
   But in the country where the houses are small,
   The gardens are very big,
   And in the city where the houses are tall,
   There are no gardens at all.
   Where would you rather live?

20 Read the text. Try and prove that every country has its own traditions and customs.

MORE ABOUT BRITISH AND RUSSIAN TRADITIONS

Every nation and every country has its own traditions and customs. In Britain traditions play a more important role in the life of people than in other countries. They say British people are very conservative [kan'səvətiv]. They are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up. But when we speak about British traditions we always remember that there are four parts in Britain — England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. Traditions are different in these parts of the country.

You already know some of the English traditions and holidays. We hope you remember St. Valentine's Day, St. Patrick's Day, Halloween which have also become traditional American
holidays. Here are some more facts about old English traditions.

The ravens[a] are one of the most famous sights at the Tower of London. They have lived in the Tower from its very beginning, over 900 years ago and as one of the old English legends [ˈlɔːndz] says, only so long as they are here will the Tower stand. If the ravens leave the Tower of London, the Crown and England will fall. One can say the ravens hold the power of the Crown itself. But the birds have never left the Tower. In the 17th century King Charles II ordered that six ravens should always live in the Tower of London and since then they have been under Royal protection. The ravens are black. Each raven has got its name and the keepers carefully look after them. If one of the birds dies, another younger raven takes its place. Londoners believe this legend and though they shouldn’t bring food to give to the birds when they come to the Tower. The keepers cut the birds’ wings[b] a bit as they are afraid that they may fly away.

Another old English custom is Guy Fawkes’ Day.[c] As it gets dark on the 5th of November (and before) children go out into

---

[a] a raven [ˈrɛva] — ворон
[b] a wing [wɪŋ] — крыло
[c] Guy Fawkes’ Day [ɡaɪ ˈfɔks dɛ] — День Гая Фокса
The streets with a figure [ˈfɪgə] like a scarecrow.¹ They stand in the streets and squares asking for “a Penny for the Guy”. Then with the money they have collected they buy fireworks² and burn the guy (the figure like a scarecrow) on their bonfire.³

People watch the fireworks and some people go to parties in the evening.

People in Russia have their own special traditions. One of them is Maslenitsa — the holiday, which lasts for a week, to say goodbye to winter. People celebrate it at the end of February or at the beginning of March. During this holiday they celebrate the end of winter and the beginning of spring. In old

---

¹ scarecrow [ˈskɛəkrəʊ] — чучело
² firework [ˈfaɪwɜːk] — фейерверк
³ bonfire [ˈbʌnfər] — большой костер
times people usually cooked pancakes, had fires, burnt straw figures of winter, they sang songs and danced. Now during “Maslenitsa week” people always cook pancakes. They invite their friends, their nearest and dearest, to see each other and eat pancakes with sour cream, fish, caviar or butter, sugar, honey.

Though different countries have different traditions and holidays people all over the world know some of them. They are — Easter, Christmas and New Year.

21 'True', 'False' or 'Don't Know'.

1. Every country has its own traditions and customs.
2. There are no common traditions all over the world.
3. English people celebrate Maslenitsa.
4. There are some common holidays in England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.
5. The ravens have been in the Tower of London since Charles II.
6. English people celebrate Guy Fawkes’ Day on the 5th of November.
7. Russian people seldom eat pancakes with caviar now.

22 Divide the text into logical parts and name them.

LET US TALK

23 You have found a few new facts about Russian and English traditions in the text (ex. 20). What other customs, traditions and holidays in these countries do you remember? Get ready to speak about some of them.

24 Say a few words about the history and main cities in one of these countries — Russia, Britain, the USA.

25 What Russian, British and American symbols do you remember? Tell your friend, who is interested in these countries, everything you can.

26 We are not sure your classmates know much about famous people of different countries. Ask them questions to find out.

1 straw [strɔː] — а) солома; б) соломенный
2 common ['kɔmən] — эд. общий
7. Do ex. 6 (a, b or c) and ex. 10 in writing.

8. A friend of yours is going to have a birthday party. You want to know more about it. Write not less than 5 questions.

**EXAMPLE:**
When/you/have your birthday party?
When are you going to have your birthday party?

1. How many people/you/invite?
2. What time/the party/start?
3. Where/you/have/the party?
4. Who/cook/the food?
5. What/you/wear?

9. Make friendly answers to these questions using will or won't.

**EXAMPLE:**
Will it be an interesting travel?
I'm sure it will. (No, of course, it won't.)

1. Will you help me to learn something about the symbols of America and Britain?
2. Will people laugh at this idea?
3. Will you tell me something about the main cities of Russia?
4. Will you take me to the central square of your city?
5. Will you tell me a few words about famous Russian people?

10. Learn to write these words.

caviar, custom, honey, hope, pancake, sour cream, science, scientific, scientist, village, space, spaceship

Listening Comprehension, 23, text "Blue Jeans"
Home Reading Lesson 5, text "Special Days"
Home Reading Lesson 6, text "The Hot Dog"
BASIC COURSE

THE WORLD AROUND US

THE GEOGRAPHY AND POLITICAL OUTLOOK OF THE UK

HEALTH AND BODY CARE

SPORTS AND GAMES

SHOPPING
LESSON 6

LET US REVIEW

1. You already know some words about nature, about the world around us. Let's play a memory game. Look at the words for a moment, then close the book and name everything you remember.

   Seaside, ocean, earth, river, lake, sea, forest, field, hill, mountain, continent, star, moon, sun, plant, tree, leaf, flower, grass, water, stone, ground, space, garden, road, wind, land, rain, snow, island, birch, planet.

2. Choose the words connected\(^1\) with a) water, b) plants, c) places on the earth. Write them in three columns. (See ex. 1.)

3. Think of names for them:
   a) the part of a plant which is often beautiful and coloured;
   b) a large area of land with lots of trees;
   c) a large water body flowing to a sea or an ocean;
   d) a big bright body in the sky from which the earth gets light;
   e) a space body in the sky which moves round the earth and shines at night.

4. Pretend you are a teacher. Let your classmates answer the questions.

   1. What long rivers of the world can you name?
   2. What do you find on the earth?

\(^{1}\) connect [kəˈnekʃən] — связывать, соединять
3. What can you see in the fields and forests?
4. What can you see in the sky?
5. Is England situated on an island or on the continent? What about Canada?
6. How many continents are there in the world?

5. Describe your favourite season for your classmates to guess.

6. Do you remember what people usually say when they meet each other? If not, look at the list of examples.

How do you do? (very formal)  
Hello.  
Hi.  
Good morning.  
Morning.

Good afternoon.  
Good evening.  
Evening.

After such a greeting people usually say:

How are you?

Your answer usually is:

Fine. Thanks. What about you?  
Very well. Thank you.

Fine. Thanks. How are you?  
OK. Thank you.

7. Listen to the dialogue, ☛ 24. Learn it by heart.

— Hi! How are you?
— Very well. Thanks. How are you?
— I am fine. How are your parents?
— Fine. What about yours?
— They are fine too.
We think you know the meanings of the adjectives: warm, long, wide, strong. Then guess the meanings of the nouns: warmth, length, width, strength. (Mind the spelling and the pronunciation.)

Make the right choice.

1. What is the (long, length) of the corridor?
2. How (long, length) is the street?
3. He is not (strong, strength) enough to fight with John.
4. My brother can lift the box because of his (strong, strength).
5. Alice’s skirt is too (wide, width).
6. We can’t get the piano through the door because of its (wide, width).
7. Is spring a (warm, warmth) season?
8. We felt the (warm, warmth) of the sun on our faces and hands.

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:
   nation [ˈneɪʃn], nationality [ˌnaɪˈɒnələti]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:
   curious       rise
   explore       continue
   set           separate
c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

curious [ˈkjʊərɪəs] (adj): ‘Curious’ means eager\(^1\) to learn about things that are new, strange or interesting. If a child is curious, he’s always asking questions. I’m curious to know what he said. Was he really curious to know more about the new planet? My little brother is very curious, he always asks a lot of questions.

explore [ɪkˈslɔːr] (v): ‘To explore’ is to travel in unknown lands for the purpose of discovery. Did our cosmonauts explore space to learn what it is like? Columbus discovered America but he did not explore the new continent.

an explorer [ɪkˈslɔːrər] (n) is one who explores.

exploration [ɪkˈslɔːrəʃn] (n): Did the exploration of space begin in Russia?

set [set] (set, set) (v): ‘To set’ means here to go down. Is the sun setting? It will be colder when the sun has set. When will the sun set? Where does the sun set? — It sets in the west.

rise [raɪz] (rose, risen) (v): What time does the sun rise? He rose from his seat to welcome me. They rose from table. Look! The curtain is rising. Why did the wind suddenly rise?

continue [kənˈtɪnjuː] (v): ‘To continue’ means to go on without stopping. The snowfall continued for two days. Tom continued his work though he felt bad. You must continue your study of English. After a short break the play continued.

separate [ˈsɛpərət] (v): to separate (the) countries, to separate two gardens. What does the sea separate? It separates the two countries. The mountains separate the two continents. Who separated the good apples from the bad ones? What separates England from France?

nation [ˈneɪʃn] (n): ‘A nation’ is a large group of people living together, having the same history, customs, traditions and language. When we speak of the American people we speak of a group that came from all parts of the world to form the American nation. Are Russians a peace-loving nation?

national [ˈnæʃnəl] (adj): What Russian national holidays do you know? Where is the National Bank? Have you ever been to

\(^1\) eager [ɪɡə] — желающий, стремящийся
the National Gallery in London? The national anthem of Great Britain is “God Save the King/Queen”.

**nationality** [ˈnæʃənælti] (n): What is your nationality? — I’m Russian.

11 Say it right: make the sentences complete using continue, curious, rise, set, explore, separate, nationality.

1. This boy is very ..., he always asks a lot of questions.
2. What’s his ...? — He is Russian.
3. The river ... the two parts of the city.
4. Yuri Gagarin was the first to ... space.
5. The sun ... earlier in winter than in summer.
6. I’m ... to know what has happened to her.
7. Why did the wind suddenly ...?
8. The rainfall ... for the whole week.

12 Ask questions for your classmates to answer.

1. What can separate the two continents?
2. What is your nationality?
3. Are Russians a peace-loving nation?
4. The sea separates England from France, doesn’t it?
5. When do we call a person curious?
6. What is the national anthem of Great Britain?
7. When does the sun rise in summer? When does it set?
8. What is the length of the main street of Moscow?

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

**used to**

Used [just] to refers to repeated actions in the past (past customs).

He used to live in Kursk (but now he doesn’t).
She used to have long hair (but now she doesn’t have it long).
I used to go to the South every summer (but now I don’t).
My brother didn’t use to like fish when a child. (more often used) = My brother used not to like fish when a child. He didn’t use to speak loudly. (more often used) = He used not to speak loudly.

Did you use to be good friends when you were children? Did they use to spend summer in the mountains?

**Pronunciation**

Used in used to is pronounced [juz]. The verb to use in the past indefinite (used) is pronounced [juzd].

13 Say:

— what sort [sɔt] of food you used to eat when you were a child;

**EXAMPLE:** I used to drink a lot of milk.

— what the people in your family used to do in summer;

**EXAMPLE:** My father used to swim a lot.

— what your friends used to wear in winter.

**EXAMPLE:** Sasha used to wear a warm sweater.

14 Mr Brown is rather poor now. But when he was young he used to be rich and famous.

a) Look at the picture on the next page and say what he used to do then.

**EXAMPLE:** He used to go to restaurants.

b) Use your imagination and say what he didn’t use to do.

**EXAMPLE:** He didn’t use to go boating in autumn.
c) Ask questions about what he used to do.

EXAMPLE: Did he use to buy expensive furniture?

LET US READ AND LEARN


THE BEAUTY OF THE WORLD

Part I

I used to see the stars at night.
I used to hear the birds.
I used to feel the warmth of the sun.

beauty [bju:t] — красота
I used to smell\(^1\) the springtime flowers.
And sing so happily.
I used to sing a song about the beauty of the world.

16 Listen to the talk, P 26. Read it and act it out.

OLD LADIES TALKING

Mrs Roberts: Oh, hello, dear. I'm so glad to meet you. This is Kate, my granddaughter.
Mrs Brown: Nice to meet you, Kate. How are you?
Kate: Fine, thanks. Granny, can I wait for you somewhere?
Mrs Roberts: OK, Kate, go and buy some cola. Explore the bar [bə:] (Kate goes to the bar.) You know she is not very brave, when she meets new people.
Mrs Brown: I used to be that way when I was her age. Though I was always curious and asked my parents a lot of questions.
Mrs Roberts: Oh, she also does. She is very much interested in geography now. And I can hear her questions all day long "What is the length of the Mississippi? What sea separates Africa from Europe? Where does the sun set and where does it rise?" She starts asking questions early in the morning and continues till late at night. Oh, here she goes with a big bottle ['bɒtl] of cola.

17 Listen to the talk of ex. 16 again, P 26, and read out the right sentences from below.

1. a) Kate meets her friend.
   b) Mrs Roberts meets Mrs Brown.
   c) Mrs Roberts and Kate meet Mrs Brown.
2. a) Kate is going to explore the bar.
   b) Kate explored the bar.
   c) Kate explores the bar.
3. a) Kate used not to be brave.
   b) Kate used to be brave.
   c) Mrs Brown used not to be brave.

\(^1\) smell [smel] — запах; чувствовать запах
4. a) Mrs Brown is curious.
   b) Mrs Roberts is curious.
   c) Kate is curious.
5. a) Kate wants to know the length of the Mississippi.
   b) Kate wants to know the width of the Thames.
   c) Kate wants to know the length of the Seine.
6. a) Kate never continues to ask questions in the evening.
   b) Kate continues to ask questions in the evening.
   c) Mrs Brown continues to ask questions all day long.

---

18 Learn to read these proper names:

- Europe ['juərəp]
- Asia ['əsɪə]
- Australia ['ɒstrəliə]
- Antarctic [æntə'krɪk]
- the Vatican ['vætɪkæn]
- France [frɑːns]
- Spain [spæn]

- Germany ['dʒəməni]
- Vietnam ['viətnəm]
- China ['tʃaɪnə]
- Iceland ['aɪslænd]
- Egypt ['ɪdʒɪpt]
- Italy ['ɪtəli]

19 Read the text "Continents and Countries" to get some new information about the world around us. Say what the smallest country in the world is.

**CONTINENTS AND COUNTRIES**

The planet we live on is the Earth. The Earth is round. If you look at the Earth from space you will be able to see land, seas, oceans, continents and even countries. Sometimes you can see them through clouds.\(^1\) They look very beautiful when the sun rises or sets.

There are four oceans and six continents. The continents are: Europe and Asia, Africa, America, Australia, Antarctic. America consists of North America and South America. The continents are very large. Oceans and seas wash them and separate them from each other. There are usually many countries

\(^1\) cloud [klaʊd] — облако
on each continent. For example, there are more than 40 countries in Africa, but there is only one large country in Australia. It has got almost the same name as the continent. Australia is a very big country, but some countries are small. Iceland is a very small country. It is situated on an island to the north of Europe. Let’s name some countries from each continent: Russia, Great Britain, France, Germany, Spain, Italy are in Europe. China, India, Vietnam are in Asia. Canada and the United States are in America. Egypt is an African country.

The largest country in the world is Russia. The smallest country is the Vatican. All the countries have interesting people, places, animals and plants.

People of different nationalities live in these countries. They speak different languages. Each country has its national flag, anthem and its own traditions and customs.

20 Now you have learnt some facts about geography. Could you answer the questions?

1. What is the name of the planet we live on?
2. What will you be able to see if you look at the Earth from space?
3. How many oceans are there on our planet?
4. How many continents are there? What are they?
5. What separates the continents from each other?
6. There are many countries on each continent, aren’t there?
7. What is the largest country in the world?

Reference Material

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flag</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Capital</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Flag of Europe]</td>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>Moscow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reference Material [ˈrefərəns ˈmɔːrəni] — Справочный Материал
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flag</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Capital</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🇬🇧</td>
<td>Great Britain</td>
<td>London</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🇫🇷</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🇩🇪</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>Berlin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🇪🇸</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🇮🇹</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🏳️‍🌈</td>
<td>ASIA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🇨🇳</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>Peking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🇮🇳</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>Delhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🇻🇳</td>
<td>Vietnam</td>
<td>Hanoi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMERICA</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Ottawa [ˈɔtəwə]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The United States</td>
<td>Washington DC [ˈwɒʃɪntən ˈdiːsiː]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFRICA</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Cairo [ˈkɑːɪəʊ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUSTRALIA</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Canberra [ˈkænbərə]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>French</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>German</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spanish (Spaniard)</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>Chinese [ˌtʃaiˈniːz]</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indian</td>
<td>Hindi [ˈhɪndi], English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vietnamese [ˌvɪɛtˈnəmɪz]</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The United States of America</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Country</strong></td>
<td><strong>Nationality</strong></td>
<td><strong>Language</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AMERICA</strong></td>
<td>Canadian American</td>
<td>English, French English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AFRICA</strong></td>
<td>Egyptian [ɪˈdʒɪpʃən]</td>
<td>Arabic [ærˈæbɪk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AUSTRALIA</strong></td>
<td>Australian</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LET US TALK**

21 Look through the Reference Material and name: 3 countries in Europe, 2 countries in Asia, 2 countries in America. What are their capitals? Find their national flags and say what their colours are.

22 Could you give the name of the continent which is almost the same as the name of the country situated on it? What language do people speak there? What is its capital? Find its national flag and describe it.

23 What languages do people who live in Canada speak? What is the capital of Canada? What are the colours of the Canadian national flag?

24 Imagine that you’re at an international ['mɪənərəl] conference ['kɒnfərəns]. Say what your name (nationality) is, where you are from and what language you speak.

**Example:** My name is Van Lee. I’m from Vietnam. I’m Vietnamese. My language is Vietnamese.
Tell the class what new information about the Earth and people on it you’ve learnt. Here is the plan to help you.

1. The Earth from space.
2. The continents.
3. The countries (the smallest and the largest ones).
4. People, nationalities, languages.

**LET US WRITE**

Copy the table and fill it in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Capital</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ottawa</td>
<td>American</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rome</td>
<td></td>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write the names of the countries:

1) nadaca  3) ssirua  5) anihe
2) ncefra  4) iyatl  6) aauisatrkl
28 Write the names of the capitals:

1) of Germany 2) of France 3) of Egypt 4) of Great Britain
5) of Canada 6) of Australia

29 Express the following in English.

1) Солнце встает на востоке, а садится на западе. 2) Они продолжали жить в маленькой деревне. 3) Когда мы были маленькими, мы обычно играли с игрушечными слонами и другими игрушечными животными. 4) Какие горы отделяют Европу от Азии? 5) Откуда Анна родом? — Она из Франции. Она родилась в Париже. Француз-ский — ее родной язык. 6) Какого цвета национальный флаг России?

30 Open the brackets and make the story complete.

FOR THOSE WHO LIKE TO TRAVEL

One day a Paris newspaper (have) an advertisement \(^1\) about a very cheap way of travelling. Many people (believe) it and (send) their money. A few days later each of them (get) a letter. The letter (read): “Sir, (rest) in bed and (remember) that the Earth (turn). Paris (turn) together with the Earth. You (travel) more than 25,000 kilometres a day. You (may) (look) out of the window and (enjoy) your journey.”

31 Learn to write these words.

curious, to explore, explorer, exploration, to set (set, set), to rise (rose, risen), to continue, to separate, nation, national, nationality

Listening Comprehension, § 27, text “Things Used to Be Different Many Years Ago”

Home Reading Lesson 7, text “Between the Sun and the Earth”

\(^1\) advertisement [adˈvɜːs(ə)mənt] — объявление
LESSON 7

LET US REVIEW

1. Look at the pictures of the flags. Name the countries, say what languages people speak in those countries and what nationalities they are.

2. Use your imagination and say what their names are and where they are from.

My name is ... . I am English. I’m from ... .
My name is ... . I am Australian.
I'm from ... .

My name is ... . I am Chinese.
I’m from ... .

My name is ... . I am French.
I’m from ... .

My name is ... . I am Canadian.
I’m from ... .

My name is ... . I am Russian.
I’m from ... .
Say in what countries and on what continents these cities are situated. The Reference Material of Lesson 6 can help you.

**EXAMPLE:** Cairo is in Africa. It is in Egypt.

Cairo, Berlin, Rome, Delhi, Ottawa, Madrid, Washington DC.

Say when these cosmonauts were in space (flew into space).


Which of the Russian cosmonauts was the first into space and when was it?

Liza, Betty, Lorance and Mary are fond of learning languages. Look at the table and say: what languages they already know and what languages they are learning.

**EXAMPLE:** Mary already knows Italian, she is learning the French language and the Spanish language now.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>knows</th>
<th>wants to know</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liza</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Betty</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorance</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Make up true sentences using the table.

The seas separate the countries.
The mountains separate the continents.
The forests separates the cities.
The river separates the islands.
The ocean separates the islands.
The sea
Say what the children used to do and what is happening now. Use the given word combinations.

**EXAMPLE:**
- to live on the farm
  Nick used to live on the farm in summer, now he is living in town (or but now he doesn’t).
- to take a holiday in the mountains,
- to watch the sunset,
- to watch the sunrise,
- to go fishing,
- to be very curious,
- to explore new territories.

Disagree.

**EXAMPLE:**
- Susan used to have long hair last year.
  Oh, no, she didn’t. She used to have short hair last year.
- We used not to play these games when we were children.
  Oh, yes, you did. You used to play these games when you were children.

1) When Harry was little he used to cry a lot.
2) They used to explore the forests when they were in South Africa.
3) She used not to like fish.
4) He used not to work in that company.
5) We used to be good friends.
6) Nelly used to be interested in stamps.
7) John used not to be fond of animals.

Express your doubt.

**EXAMPLE:**
Nelly used to explore new lands with her father who is an explorer.
Did she really use to explore new lands?

1. My granny used to cook fantastic pancakes.
2. My grandad used to be a scientist.
3. Nelly used to be very much interested in science.
4. The pupils used to learn a lot about history and the main cities of Russia.
5. She used to live in a small village.
6. He used to get interesting information about space and space trips.

Try and remember what people usually say when they part. The list of examples below can help you.

Goodbye, see you tomorrow. So long, see you soon.
Goodbye, see you on Monday. So long, see you again.
Bye-bye, see you. (See you around.)
Goodbye, I hope to see you some day.

When you answer you can say the same or you can add:

Have a nice day! Have fun!
Have a nice weekend! Have a good time!
Have a good trip!

After this people usually say:

Thanks.
Thanks, you too!
Thanks, the same to you.

Listen to the dialogues, 28: Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) — So long, Helen.
     — Bye, Nick. See you on Monday. Have a nice weekend.
     — Thanks, you too.
2) — Goodbye, Mr Wilson. It was so nice to meet you.
     — Goodbye, Ann. It was nice meeting you. Hope to see you some day.
3) — So long, Nelly. See you soon.
     — Bye, Fred. See you.
4) — Bye, Marilyn.
— Goodbye. See you tomorrow. Have fun!

**LET US LEARN**

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

**Past Continuous**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>was/were + Ving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**+/—**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>was/wasn't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>was/wasn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>was/wasn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>were/weren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>were/weren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>were/weren't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**?**

**Was**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>sleeping at 5 o'clock yesterday?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>Yes, I (he, she) was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>No, I (he, she) wasn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Were**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we</th>
<th>sleeping at 5 o'clock yesterday?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Yes, we (you, they) were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>No, we (you, they) weren't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While Jane was reading a book, Susan was watching TV. While Nick was skiing in the mountains, Teddy was swimming in the ocean.

1 while [was] — в то время как
While Ann was drawing a picture, Fred was writing a letter. They were playing football when their mother came. Teddy was speaking over the phone when the door bell rang.

13 Say what the people were doing yesterday at different time.

**EXAMPLE:** Robert was speaking on the phone at 2.45 yesterday.

1. Robert (2.45/to speak) on the phone.
2. Nelly and Ann (11.30/to move) into a new flat.
3. Mrs Brown (5.45/to sell) vegetables.
4. The Greens (8.00/to sail) to St. Petersburg.
5. Pete and Jack (7.00/to fight) each other.
6. Bill (10.15/to prepare) for his classes.
7. Andrew and Ted (4.30/listen to) the music.

14 Say what Andrew's relatives were doing when he came home.

**EXAMPLE:** When Andrew came home, his mother was cooking dinner.

1. Mother/to cook dinner.
2. Grandparents/to watch a feature film on TV.
3. Father/to read a newspaper.
4. Uncle/to look through the magazine.
5. Aunts/to make jam.
6. Cousins/to play with toys on the floor.
7. Little brother/to cry.

15 Mrs Brown has got 8 children. She went out to do the shopping and asked her children to help her. But they didn't. She is back home and asks her children: "What were you doing while I was shopping?"

One of her "good" children answers: "While you were shopping, I was washing up."

Give the other children's answers. The word combinations in the box on the next page will help you.
to make one's bed, to cook dinner, to wash the floor, to make tea, to clean the carpet, to clean the clothes, to wash the window

16 Look at the pictures and say what her children were really doing.

17 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

international [ɪntə'næʃnəl]
practically [ˈpræktɪkli]
an apartment ['æn ə'pærmt]
an equivalent [æn ɪkwɪvələnt]
New Zealand [njuː 'ziːlænd]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

while both
nowadays foreign
use
c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

while [waɪl] (conj): ‘While’ means during the time that ...
While he was taking a shower, his friend was washing up. I was looking through the magazine, while Nelly was speaking to her aunt.

nowadays [ˈnɔːdədez] (adv): ‘Nowadays’ means at the present time, in these days. Do most people travel by plane nowadays?

use [juːz] (v), to use — used: May I use your textbook? — You certainly may. When we walk we use our legs and feet. I don’t know how to use this rule. Are you using this dictionary?

both [bəʊθ] (pron): ‘Both’ means the two, the one as well as the other. Were both boys playing football? They were both tired and hungry. I want both books (I want both of them).

foreign [ˈfɔːrɪn] (adj): Have you ever visited any foreign countries? What foreign languages does she speak? He doesn’t speak any foreign languages.

18 Make up sentences using the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People</th>
<th>travel</th>
<th>by train</th>
<th>cartoons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Most people</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>videos</td>
<td>feature films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many people</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>a lot of newspapers</td>
<td>a lot of magazines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nowadays.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19 Say what things you use:
— to buy vegetables and fruit,
— to write letters,
— to learn foreign languages,
— to cook dinner,
— to drink coffee/mineral water,
— to eat soup.
**EXAMPLE:** I use money to buy fruit.

Say you are fond of both things.

**EXAMPLE:** I am fond of both fruit and vegetables.
- fruit, vegetables;
- tea, coffee;
- milk, water;
- country life, town life;
- short stories, long novels;
- cartoons, feature films;
- to travel by sea, to travel by plane;
- to ski, to skate;
- to work at home, to work at the library.

Let your classmate give you some information to express your surprise. Use the example.

**EXAMPLE:** P₁: I have never been to the Bolshoi Theatre.
P₂: You don't say (so)!

---

**LET US READ AND LEARN**

**22** Listen to the song "The Beauty of the World", part II, 29.

**THE BEAUTY OF THE WORLD**

Part II

It was a long, long time ago,
I used to sing a song.
Before the black smoke¹ filled² the sky,
I used to sing a song.
I used to sing a song about the beauty of the world.

¹ smoke [smok] — дым
² fill [fɪl] — наполнять
Did you use to see the stars shining in the night?
Did you use to hear the birds and feel the sun?
Did you use to smell the flowers?
Their colours were so bright.
I used to sing a song about the beauty of the world.

**LET US READ**

23 Read the dialogue “English-speaking Countries” and say why Helen is much interested in the English language.

**ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES**

*Diana:* Hi, Helen! Haven’t seen you for ages! How’ve you been?
*Helen:* Just fine, thanks, and you? It’s been a long time since I saw you.
*Diana:* Right, it has. I last saw you in the library. You were preparing for the talk on your favourite subject — English, of course.
*Helen:* True. But why are you laughing? I think English is the most popular language nowadays. People all over the world speak English. In Russia and France, in Germany and Italy, in Spain and Egypt people learn English as a foreign language.
*Diana:* I know they do. By the way, they say, that English has become the most important international language of nowadays.²
*Helen:* Oh, yes, it certainly has. People will understand you practically everywhere if you speak English. In most of the countries people speak English and their native language of course.
*Diana:* And in what countries do people use English as their native language?
*Helen:* In Great Britain, the USA, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. These are English-speaking countries.

¹ to prepare for the talk — готовиться к докладу
² of nowadays [ˈnɔʊədəz] — нашего времени
Diana: So in all these countries people speak the same language, don’t they?
Helen: My answer is “yes” and “no”. Though they all speak English, yet it is a little different in each of these countries.
Diana: You don’t say so! I never knew that Americans and the English speak different languages.
Helen: Oh, no! They don’t. They speak English in both countries, but people speak American English in the USA and British English in Great Britain. Different words often name the same things.
Diana: What do you mean?
Helen: I mean that people live in flats in England but they live in apartments in America. They eat cookies and candies in the USA, but biscuits and sweets in Great Britain. Children go to school in the fall in America but in autumn in England.
Diana: That’s very interesting indeed.

24 Answer the questions.

1. What English-speaking countries do you know?
2. Is English or French the most important international language nowadays?
3. What foreign languages are popular in Russia?
4. Do you know American equivalents [rkwivələnts] for the British words “biscuits”, “sweets”, “autumn”?

**LET US TALK**

25 Work in pairs. Imagine that you are preparing for a test on the topic “English-speaking Countries”. Ask each other questions to see what things you remember about them. Find out: a) what English-speaking countries you remember; b) in what countries the English language is popular nowadays and is used as the international language; c) if English is the same in all English-speaking countries; d) what words are used in America instead of the words “biscuits”, “sweets”, “autumn”.

26 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 23.)

¹ You don’t say so! — Не может быть! Да что ты говоришь!
Say everything you can about the following continents:

a) North America,
b) Europe,
c) Australia.

LET US WRITE

Do ex. 10 in writing.

Complete the sentences:

- While the children were running .... .
- While my father was looking through the magazine .... .
- While Ann was reading a novel .... .
- ... when I saw them in the street.
- ... when the telephone rang.
- ... when Pete came back home.

Express the following in English.

1) Вчера в 3 часа Анна играла на флейте, а ее братья играли на скрипке. 2) В то время как Фред включал пылесос, его жена включала стиральную машину. 3) В то время как я покупала овощи, я разговаривала с продавцом овощей и фруктов. 4) Мой папа чинил центральное отопление вчера в 7 часов вечера. 5) Кто играл в теннис, когда вы вошли в зал? 6) Маленький Том смотрел на карту Европы, когда его сестра рассказывала ему об Англии. 7) Что ты делал, когда бабушка пекла блины? 8) В то время когда дети слушали музыку, их родители наблюдали за восходом солнца.

Make the right choice:

1. Moscow is in .... .
a) Asia, b) Australia, c) Africa, d) Europe
2. The Australians speak .... .
a) English, b) American, c) French, d) Australian
3. ... separate Europe from Asia.
   a) The Alps, b) The Volga, c) The Urals, d) The Thames
4. ... is in Africa.
   a) China, b) Vietnam, c) Egypt, d) Spain
5. The national Russian flag is ... .
   a) blue, red and white, b) blue, white and red, c) white, blue and red, d) red, white and blue
6. John is a typical ... name.
   a) English, b) German, c) French, d) Spanish

32 Learn to write these words and phrases.

while, nowadays, use, both, foreign, You don’t say (so)!

Listening Comprehension, 30, text “A Quickly-minded Explorer”

Home Reading Lesson 8, text “Prince Sparrow”, part I

LESSON 8

LET US REVIEW

1. Look at the pictures and say what the boys were doing.
2 The police officer asks Mr Pace some questions about yesterday. Pretend you are Mr Pace and answer the officer's questions. The word combinations will help you.

**Police officer:** What were you doing at 9 (11, 2, 5, 7) o'clock yesterday?

- to have breakfast, to watch TV, to read a newspaper, to work in the office, to learn a foreign language

3 Robert was nearly two hours late for school. This is what happened.

1. 7.30. He cleaned his teeth in the bathroom. The telephone rang. It was his granny. He spoke to his granny for a few minutes.
2. He ate his breakfast. The door bell rang. It was his friend.
3. They left for school. They saw Robert's uncle from another city at the door. Robert let him in.
4. Robert showed their flat to his uncle. There was a call from his father. He explained to him why he was at home with his uncle.

5. He walked to school and saw a burglar in the house opposite. Robert spoke to the police.

Say what Robert was doing at the time mentioned in the episode.

**EXAMPLE:** While Robert was walking to school, he saw a burglar in the house opposite.

4 Your friend lives in a big city. Ask him questions about the place his house is situated in. The words will help you.

the library, the Folk Art Museum, the circus, the picture gallery, the village, the building of the art exhibition

**EXAMPLE:** Is your house situated near the cinema?

5 Read and compare:

**past indefinite**

— He **sold** his car yesterday.

— They **moved** into a new flat 3 weeks ago.

— Alec **fought** with his brother last Sunday.

— I **wrote** 3 letters the day before yesterday.

**past continuous**

— He **was selling** his car at 4 o’clock yesterday.

— I couldn’t reach them as they **were moving** into a new flat.

— The boys **were fighting** when their father came in.

— While Nelly **was speaking** to her cousin, I **was writing** a letter.

6 Think of 6 sentences using:

yesterday — yesterday at 3 o’clock;
last Sunday — when the telephone rang;
3 days ago — while I was reading a magazine.

(Ex. 5 can help you.)
Say what you used to do when you were a child and what you didn’t use to do. Think of not less than 6 sentences.

Do you remember how to invite people to this or that place? We hope you do. When people invite somebody to the cinema, the theatre, to have lunch, etc. they usually say:

- Let’s go to the park.
- Let’s have lunch.
- How about watching a good TV show?
- How about going to the circus?
- I feel like going to the cinema tonight.
- I feel like playing chess.
- I don’t feel like studying tonight, let’s go for a walk.
- Can you come over for my party tomorrow?
- Can you come over for dinner tonight?
- I’d like to take you to the Bolshoi on Wednesday.
- We’d like to take you to our City Museum.

In all these cases the people you invite to different places are your friends or you know them very well. Your invitations are informal.

But if you invite people who are much older than you, who are your teachers or your friends’ parents or people you don’t know very well you’d better say:

- I’d like to invite you to our meeting on Friday. Can you come?
- We are having a party on Saturday night. Would you like to join us?

When people accept invitations they usually say:

- I’d love to. Thanks.
- I’d be glad to (come). Thank you.
- OK.
- All right.
- That sounds good.
- That sounds great.
- That sounds like fun. Let’s (go).
- I’d like that very much.
When people *refuse* they usually say:

I'm afraid I can't.
I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't.
I wish I could but I'm afraid I can't.
Thank you for your invitation. But I can't, I'm afraid/I'm sorry.

Listen to the dialogues. ☞ 31. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) — Can you come over for dinner tonight?
   — I'd like that very much. What time should I come?
   — Come at 6, if you can.
   — Fine.

2) — We are having a party tonight. I hope you can come.
   — I'd love to.

3) — Let's have lunch today.
   — OK. Where shall we meet?
   — In the hall, at 12.

4) — I don't feel like reading now. Let's go for a walk.
   — OK. Where shall we go?
   — To the park, I think.
   — That sounds good. I'd love to.

5) — I'm hungry. Let's have a bite.
   — All right. Shall we buy a hamburger?

6) — I feel like going to a disco tonight.
   — That sounds like fun. Let's go.

7) — I'd like to invite you to our concert. Please, can you come?
   — I'd be glad to come. Thank you. What time shall I come?
   — Come around 5 if you can.

8) — We are going to an art exhibition after classes. Would you like to join us?
   — I wish I could but I'm afraid I can't. I'm really very busy.
Neither ... nor

I like neither apples nor oranges.
I've used neither water nor milk.
He buys neither fruit nor vegetables.
She knows neither geography nor history.
They speak neither English nor French.
We'll live neither in Kiev nor in Odessa.
Buy neither sugar nor sweets.
Neither Margaret nor John was there.
Neither Nelly nor Kate drinks coffee.
She plays neither football nor tennis.

0 Disagree.

EXAMPLE: We need both sugar and sweets.
We need neither sugar nor sweets.

1. We need both fruit and vegetables.
2. They play both the guitar and the violin.
3. The group has explored both the land and the ocean.
4. I will go to both Canada and Australia.
5. She drinks both water and coffee after lunch.
6. Yesterday both Jack and Steve ate pancakes and sour cream.
7. Ann and Jill both are fond of honey.

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Try and read the new words:

monkey — among  five — hide

gave — save    sleep — deep

night — high   Fred — fresh
b) Look up the words in bold type in your vocabulary.
c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

among [ə'mʌŋ] (prep): among the flowers, among the trees. Is your native village among the mountains? Paris is among the largest cities in the world. I like to be among friends. There was a little house among the hills. Did he divide the cake among his friends?

save [scəv] (v): to save people, to save the country, to save children.
1) The firemen saved the woman from the burning house. Russian people fought to save their country. Who saved the child?
2) Save money in the bank.

high [hai] (adj): a high building, a high hill, a high mountain. That mountain is very high. The Spasskaya Tower of the Moscow Kremlin is not very high. — How high is it? — It is more than 70 metres high.

high [hai] (adv): to fly high, high in the sky, high in the mountains. The bird flew high in the sky.

hide [haɪd] (v): hide — hid — hidden, to hide coins, to hide money, to hide food, to hide collections. Quick! Hide yourself! Have you hidden all the pictures? Mary hides the money she saves in her wardrobe. Do you like to play hide-and-seek?

deep [dip] (adj): a deep river, a deep lake, a deep sleep. The river is 3 metres deep. The snow is 6 metres deep.
deep (adv): deep in thought, deep in the snow, deep in the forest. The explorers went deep into the jungle ['dʒʌŋkl].

fresh [frɛʃ] (adj): fresh flowers, fresh air, fresh water, fresh meat, fresh bread. I always buy fresh vegetables. — Is there any fresh news? — No, there is not.

12 Read and compare:

A

among

1. Nick has got many friends.
   He likes to be among them.

between

1. Nick has got two friends.
   He is sitting on the sofa between them.
2. There are a lot of hills around the farm. The farm is among the hills.
3. I live among the mountains. (more than two)
4. Divide the sweets among the children. (more than two)

2. There are two hills near the farm. The farm is between them.
3. There is a table and two chairs in the room. The table is between the chairs.
4. Divide the sweets between the two children.

---

**high**

1. That is a high building.

2. I see a high tower in front of us.

3. There are many big, high trees near their country house.

**tall**

1. That is a tall building.

2. I see a tall tower in front of us.

3. There are many big, tall trees near their country house.
4. My father is a tall man.

13 Name four things that can be: deep, high, fresh.

14 Johnny is a brave fireman. He has saved many people and animals from burning houses. Say whom he has saved.

**EXAMPLE:** Johnny has saved an old woman.

15 Look at the picture and say where the mice are. How many mice have you found? (There should be nine.)

---

**LET US READ AND LEARN**

16 Listen to the poems, 32, and read them. Then learn the one you like best by heart.

**THE WIND**

(by Christina Georgina Rossetti)

Who has seen the wind?
Neither you nor I.
But when the trees bow down their heads,  
The wind is passing by.  
Who has seen the wind?  
Neither I nor you.  
But when the leaves hang trembling,  
The wind is passing through.

**A NAUGHTY PIG**

Mary Middling had a pig,  
Not very little and not very big,  
Not very pink, not very green,  
Not very dirty, not very clean,  
Not very good, not very naughty,  
Not very humble, not very haughty,  
Not very thin, not very fat,  
Now what would you give for a pig like that?

---

**LET US READ**

7 a) We are sure you like animals. Read the text and say why some of them are in danger.

**ANIMALS IN DANGER**

People have lived on our planet for many years. They lived and live on different continents in different countries. People depend on their planet, on the sun, on animals and plants around them. Today let's read and speak about some animals on our planet the Earth.

33. Many animals and birds on the Earth are disappearing. Many of them are in danger. Indian tigers and African ele-

to bow [bɔː] — наклонять  
but when the leaves hang trembling — когда колышутся листья  
aughty [ˈnaʊti] — небосящийся, капризный  
humble [ˈhʌmbl] — скромный, смиренный  
aughty [ˈhɔːti] — надменный, высокомерный
Elephants are among them. People have hunted and killed many tigers in India and a lot of elephants in Africa. Why?

Tigers and elephants are often dangerous animals. Tigers can kill cows, sheep, other domestic animals and sometimes they can also kill men. Some people are afraid of tigers and kill them to save their domestic animals and their lives. But some people have often hunted tigers for fun and for their beautiful skin.¹ They can easily sell the skin and get a lot of money as the prices² are high.

The result is very sad. There are few Indian tigers left on the Earth now. Many of them are old, sick animals. Most tigers don’t hunt people nowadays, but hide from them in deep, dark forests. Or they rather hid there earlier, because there aren’t many forests for tigers nowadays. People have cut³ down many trees. And the question is: “Have those animals got a future?” ☯

We can ask the same question about African elephants. They are wonderful animals. They can help men. In the 19th century Africa was full of elephants. But these days there are not many of them except in African parks.

This is the sad story of Indian tigers and African elephants. But many less dangerous wild animals and birds are also disappearing from the Earth. Modern life is bad for them. The air is not fresh. The water is not clean. They don’t often have good things to eat and space to live. You can find their names in the Red Book. You can find the names of some fish there too.

People must take special care of them all.

¹ skin [skɪn] — шкура
² price [praɪs] — цена
³ cut [kʌt] (cut; cut) — резать, рубить; cut down — срубать
We must save wild animals.
We must find the right balance [ˈbæləns] between land, people and animals.
We must take care of nature.

b) Listen to the text, 33, and say why people have hunted and killed many tigers in India.

18 Answer the questions.
1. What does the life of the people on Earth depend on?
2. Why are some animals and birds disappearing nowadays?
3. Can elephants be useful?
   What can they do for man?
4. Are only Indian tigers and African elephants in danger nowadays?
5. Why are other animals also in danger?
6. Why can you find the names of some animals, birds and fish in the Red Book?
7. What must people do to save the wild animals?

**LET US TALK**

19 Choose a partner and talk to him/her about the animals in danger.
20 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 17.)
21 Tell your classmates about "the animals in danger" in this country.
22 What could you do to help animals and birds?

**LET US WRITE**

23 Do ex. 6 in writing.
24 Do you know any stories (facts) about an animal or a bird in danger? Then write 5-6 sentences about it.
25  Complete the dialogues.

1) — . . . . . 
   — I’d love to. When should I come?

2) — . . . . . 
   — I wish I could but I’m afraid I can’t. I’m leaving for London tomorrow.

3) — We are having a party on Friday night. Can you come?

4) — I don’t feel like watching TV tonight. ...

5) — Can you come over for dinner on Wednesday?

6) — . . . . . 
   — OK. Where shall we meet?

26  Express the following in English.

1) Я не люблю ни хоккея, ни футбол. 2) Среди этих цветов нет ни желтых, ни голубых. 3) Они не смогли спасти ни животных, ни птиц. 4) Она не пряла ни значки, ни монеты. 5) В магазине не было ни свежего мяса, ни свежей рыбы. 6) Ни он, ни я не можем экономить деньги.

27  Make the right choice.

1. He never goes ... in the forest.
   a) fresh, b) deep, c) high, d) wide

2. There is always ... air in the forest.
   a) fresh, b) deep, c) high, d) tall

3. She is a ... girl.
   a) high, b) tall, c) fresh, d) long

4. They always bring ... flowers to the Monument of the Unknown Soldier.
   a) deep, b) fresh, c) long, d) high

5. There was a ... tower not far from the bridge.
   a) deep, b) long, c) fresh, d) high
28. Open the brackets to complete the sentences.

1. Paul (watch) TV when his mother (come) into the room.
2. Michael (drink) coffee while he (read) the newspaper.
3. Don (write) a letter at 5 o'clock yesterday.
4. Ken (use) to prepare breakfast early in the morning.
5. Don and Kim (talk) while they (play) chess.
6. Last Sunday Patty and her younger brother (drive) to the seaside for the weekend.

29. Learn to write these words.

among, to save, high, to hide (hid, hidden), deep, fresh

Listening Comprehension, 34, text "The Day I Came Face to Face with a Tiger"

Home Reading Lesson 9, text "Prince Sparrow", part II

LESSON 9

LET US REVIEW

1. Look at the pictures and say how deep (high) they are.

- 3 metres
- 1200 metres
- 20 metres
2. Arrange the words into two groups (verb, adjective).
Separate, national, save, high, deep, use, hide, fresh, curious, explore, set, rise, continue, foreign.

3. Say where you've hidden the things.
**EXAMPLE:** I've hidden your pen under the book.

4. Work in pairs. Say what can be fresh, deep, high. Use these combinations of words in the sentences of your own.
**EXAMPLE:**
- P₁: Fresh air.
- P₂: The air is usually fresh after rain.

5. There was a big fire in Green Street. But the firemen have saved a lot of people and animals. Whom have they saved?
**EXAMPLE:** The firemen have saved an old man.

6. Name 6-7 cities which are among the largest cities in the world.
**EXAMPLE:** Delhi is among the largest cities in the world.

7. Look at the pictures. Choose a partner and make a short dialogue about each picture.
**EXAMPLE:**
- P₁: What were (was) you (he/she) doing at ...?
- P₂: I (we ...) was (were) ... .
Complete the sentences to compare them.

1. Paul never (use) his brother’s car when they lived in the country.
2. The firemen (save) 5 children the other day.
3. Yesterday Nick (hide) his mother’s bag and nobody could find it.
4. Nick’s uncle (explore) a small island in the Pacific Ocean when he was young.
5. He (rise) from the chair to say “Hello!”

1. When Paul was returning home he (use) his brother’s car.
2. The hotel was on fire and the firemen (save) the people who were in it.
3. Yesterday at 5 o’clock Nick was in the garden. He (hide) his mother’s bag.
4. While Nick’s uncle (explore) new lands, his wife was writing articles about his trips.
5. When we were on the bank of the river the sun (rise).

Accept the invitation.

1. Would you like to join us for a game of basketball?
2. Can you come for tea at 5 o’clock tomorrow?
3. I'd like to invite you to our school play. Will you come?
4. Let's have dinner tonight.
5. I feel like going to the theatre tonight.

10 Refuse the invitation.

1. Would you like to join me for a cup of coffee?
2. We are having a conference in a week's time. At 12 o'clock on Tuesday. Will you come?
3. I don't feel like staying in. Let's go for a walk.
4. Let me take you to our local museum.
5. I'd like to invite you to our school. We are having a quiz. Do you know?

11 We hope you remember the way people thank each other. If not, look at the list of examples below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thank you.</th>
<th>Thanks a lot for everything.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thank you so much.</td>
<td>Thanks for your help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you ever so much.</td>
<td>That was kind of you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thanks a lot.</td>
<td>That was very kind of you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thanks again.</td>
<td>That was awfully kind of you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thanks. That is just what I wanted.

When you receive thanks you usually answer:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You're welcome.</th>
<th>Glad that I could help.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It was my pleasure.</td>
<td>Glad that I could do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My pleasure. It was nothing.</td>
<td>Anytime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm glad I could help.</td>
<td>I was happy to do it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12 Listen to the dialogues, 35. Read and learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) — Oh, Mary. You've done so much for me. Thanks a lot for everything.
    — It was my pleasure, Bill. Glad that I could help.

1 awfully ['æfəli] — ужасно
2) — Thank you for your help. That was very kind of you.
— My pleasure. It was nothing.
3) — Thank you, officer. Now I understand where to go and
how to find the underground station.
— Anytime, sir.
4) — Thanks again. It was awfully kind of you.
— You’re welcome.
5) — Thanks a lot. That is just what I wanted.
— You’re welcome. I was happy to buy it for you.

3 Look at the pictures and say what Nelly doesn’t like.

EXAMPLE: Nelly likes neither potatoes nor carrots.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Passive Voice

The passive voice is used when we don’t know who did
something or it is not important who did it.

to be + V₃/Ved
Present Indefinite Passive

+ The table is **made** of wood.
The book is **sold** everywhere.
A lot of houses are **built** in the city every year.

- Rice is not **grown** in England.
Meat is not usually **eaten** for breakfast in England.
Those newspapers are not **sold** here.

? Are the best cameras **made** in Japan?
Is English **spoken** all over the world?
Is coffee **grown** in Russia?

wh?
Where is French **spoken**?
When are the newspapers **brought** to you?
What is usually **eaten** for lunch in your family?

14 Say what buildings are usually built in big cities.

**EXAMPLE:** Railway stations are usually built in big cities.
theatres  bridges  houses
cinemas  schools  hospitals
shops  banks  airports

15 Say what languages are spoken in Russia, England, France, Germany, China, Australia, Canada and some other countries.

**EXAMPLE:** Russian is spoken in Russia.
Say what is usually bought when the weather is hot.

**EXAMPLE:** Cold drinks are bought when the weather is hot.

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

lily ['lɪli]  
emblem ['ɛmblaɪm]  
chrysanthemum [krɪˈsænθɪməm]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>purple</th>
<th>daisy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>poppy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasant</td>
<td>snowdrop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to climb</td>
<td>primrose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daffodil</td>
<td>blossom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honeysuckle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

**purple** ['pɜːpl] *(adj)*: a purple flower, a purple blouse. Purple is my favourite colour. Red and blue together will make purple.

**smell** [smel] *(n)*: a sweet smell, a nice smell, a strong smell, the smell of the sea. I don’t like the smell of these flowers.

**to smell** *(v)*: smell — smelt (smelled) — smelt (smelled); I think I smell roses here. I don’t smell anything. It smells good. The flowers smelt fantastic! Did those flowers smell sweet?

**pleasant** ['plɛsənt] *(adj)*: a pleasant afternoon, a pleasant voice, a flower with a pleasant smell, a pleasant smile. She is a pleasant woman. It’s quite pleasant today, though the wind is rather strong. The rose is a flower with a pleasant smell. He is not a pleasant man, is he?

**emblem** ['ɛmbliːm] *(n)*: an emblem of peace, an emblem of
independence. A country's flag is an emblem of the nation. Is the national emblem of England a rose?

climb [klaɪm] (v): 1. ‘To climb’ usually means to go up by using both the hands and the feet; to climb a tree. Monkeys climb well.
2. to climb a mountain (the stairs). The old lady climbs the stairs with difficulty. Do you think you can climb that tree?

daffodil [ˈdeɪfədɪl] (n), daffodils: a field of daffodils. The daffodil is a plant that has long leaves and yellow or white flowers. My aunt likes daffodils very much but my uncle doesn't.

lily ['lɪli] (n), lilies: The lily has a large flower. She doesn't like lilies. The water lily grows in the water. Do lilies smell nice?

chrysanthemum [krɪsænθɪməm] (“mum”) (n): The chrysanthemum is an autumn flower. Are you fond of autumn chrysanthemums? My granny doesn't grow chrysanthemums in her garden.

honeysuckle [ˈhʌniˈsʌkl] (n): The honeysuckle is a climbing plant that has many small, sweet-smelling flowers.

daisy [ˈdeɪzɪ] (n), daisies: The daisy is a very common small flower. The daisy is a flower with pink, white or yellow petals\(^1\) around a yellow centre.

poppy [ˈpɒpi] (n), poppies: The poppy is a plant with round, red or yellow flowers. Is the poppy your favourite flower? In spring I always go to the mountains where poppies grow.

snowdrop [ˈsnəʊdrɒp] (n), snowdrops: The snowdrop is an early spring flower. I think it is the first flower we can see at the end of winter.

primrose [ˈpraɪmraʊz] (n), primroses: Have you ever seen primroses? Are primroses autumn or spring flowers?

blossom [ˈblosəm] (n): ‘Blossom' is the flowers of a tree, especially of a fruit tree. Apple blossoms, in blossom, to be in blossom. I like my garden when all the trees are in blossom.

\(^1\) petal [ˈpetəl] — лепесток
Look at the pictures and a) name the flowers; b) say which of them smell pleasant or don’t smell at all; c) which of them you like or dislike; d) name spring, summer and autumn flowers.

Say what can be purple.

**EXAMPLE:** A blouse can be purple.

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

feel/feels
N + smell/smells + Adj
taste/tastes
sound/sounds

The boy feels **bad**.
The rose smells **pleasant**.
The cake tastes **sweet**.
The song sounds **sad**.
Make up as many true sentences as you can.

a) The old woman       smell pleasant.
The red flowers          feels salty.
The apples              tastes lovely.
The little girl          sound fantastic.
The purple flowers       feel sad.
The meat                sounds sweet.
The song                smells nice.
The melody             taste bad.

b) The apple trees are in blossom in May.
The fruit trees were in blossom in spring.

LET US READ AND LEARN

Listen to the poem "Flowers" and read it, 36. Then learn it by heart.

FLOWERS
I like flowers that are bright,
I like flowers that are white.
I like flowers with a nice smell,
That blossom in gardens so well.

LET US READ

Read the text and name the flowers for autumn months. What is interesting about them?

TWELVE FLOWERS OF THE YEAR
My granny likes nature very much. She has lived in a small village all her life. She knows a lot about different plants. My granny says that there is a special flower for each month of
the year. She often tells me about these flowers and she also shows them to me as they are all in her garden collection. This is what she says.

The snowdrop is the flower for January. It is as white as snow, and appears in forests and gardens when there is still snow there. The little plant is a native flower of Europe.

February’s flower is the primrose. Primroses can be white, yellow, red, pink, rose, purple and orange. The flowers look like stars.

The primrose is one of the earliest spring flowers. They grow wild in some countries in Europe, and North America, but you can find lots of them in China.

The flower of the month of March is the daffodil. It appears very early in spring too. The flowers are usually yellow. The plant has long leaves and a sweet pleasant smell. It has been a favourite flower in many gardens.

April’s flowers are daisies. You can see them everywhere in the fields, gardens and even roadsides.

The flower for May is the hawthorn. It grows on a small tree and its blossoms are pink, white or red. The hawthorn also has small hard fruit which looks like a little apple. June’s flower is the honeysuckle.

1 hawthorn [hɔθɔrn] — боярышник
July’s flowers are water lilies. You can often see them on the waters of a quiet lake. Frogs like to use their large green leaves as platforms. Some water lilies are deep yellow in colour and some are white, pink, blue or even purple.

The flower for August is the poppy. Poppies have bright red, orange, purple or yellow flowers. They look like cups. They often grow wild in the mountains and in the fields.

The morning glory, September’s flower is a climbing plant with blue or purple flowers. Their green leaves look like small
green hearts. The morning glory opens early in the morning, but when the hot sun appears in the sky it closes. The blossoms are like bells. The morning glory has a sweet smell and can grow wild.

October’s flower is the hop.\(^1\) People use it to make beer.\(^2\) It is a climbing plant which often decorates country houses.

The flower for November is the chrysanthemum. It is one of the oldest known flowers. It has been grown in Japan for nearly two thousand years and is the national flower and the emblem of that island country. This lovely flower can be white, yellow, red, purple or pink. Chrysanthemums appear from late August to December when most other flowers have stopped flowering ready for the winter.

\[\text{hop}\] chrysanthemum \[\text{holly}\]

December’s plant is the holly.\(^3\) Its flowers have produced red berries for the Christmas season. The holly has prickly\(^4\) green leaves. It is an evergreen.\(^5\)

\(^1\) hop [hop] — хмель
\(^2\) beer [biə] — пиво
\(^3\) holly [ˈhɒli] — ель
\(^4\) prickly [ˈprɪkli] — колючий
\(^5\) evergreen [ˈevəgrɛn] — вечнозеленое растение
23 Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and read the names of the flowers for each month.

**EXAMPLE:** $P_1$: May.  
$P_2$: Hawthorn.

24 What flowers are they?

1) the national flower of Japan;  
2) the plant of the Christmas season;  
3) the earliest spring flower;  
4) the flower that you can see on the surface of a lake;  
5) the flower that never closes when the sun is in the sky.

**LET US TALK**

25 We are sure you like flowers. Choose any flower for any month you like and say everything you know about it.

26 Think of any flower mentioned in the text and let your classmates guess it asking questions.

**EXAMPLE:** Is it a spring flower?  
What colour can it be? etc.

27 Do you think flowers are in danger nowadays? Try and prove it.

**LET US WRITE**

28 Do ex. 7 and ex. 8 in writing.

29 Match the words. Write the sentences with these combinations of words.

| pleasant | river |
| fresh | flower |
| purple | smell |
| deep | air |
30 Write the synonyms to the words:
   nice, tall, small, big, hard, too, tell, blossom.

31 Write the following in English.
   1) Кофе выращивают в Южной Америке. 2) Масло делают из молока. 3) Новые дома строят во всех больших городах. 4) Комнату убирают каждый день. 5) Яблоки и апельсины покупают в магазинах.

32 Learn to write these words:
   purple, smell, pleasant, emblem, to climb, daffodil, lily, chrysanthemum, honeysuckle, daisy, poppy, snowdrop, primrose, blossom, to be in blossom

Listening Comprehension, ☞ 37, text “Two Trips”

Home Reading Lesson 10, text “We’ve Hit Land”

LESSON 10

LET US REVIEW

1  Make up as many true sentences as you can.

It's very pleasant to be in the country when fruit trees are in blossom.
   birds come back.
   flowers smell sweet in the fields.
   the sun is high up in the sky.
   it doesn’t rain.
   it doesn’t snow.
   it is not windy.
Look at the pictures and say what things are purple.

Look, read and compare:

What a/an ...!

What a pleasant face!
What a deep lake!
What an easy text!
What an interesting film!

What ...!

What fresh air!
What deep snow!
What high hills!
What dangerous snakes!

You like some things. Express your feelings using the example.

**EXAMPLE:**
What fresh fruit!
What an expensive car!

Ask questions for more information.
a) Rick went to Spain; b) Ann has been to Washington DC.

Give Nelly's answers to Caroline's questions and statements.

Nelly: . . . .
Caroline: It is about flowers. Do you know that there is a special flower for each month?
Nelly: No, . . . . .
Caroline: Oh. It's the primrose. Do you know anything special about these flowers?
Nelly: Yes, . . . . .
Caroline: And when were you born? I wonder what flower is for the month of your birthday . . . . .
Nelly: . . . . .
Caroline: Oh, then it's . . . . .

Now pretend that one of you is Caroline and the other is Nelly. Act out the conversation. Don't forget to change over.

Think of five more questions that Caroline (or Nelly) could ask.

Disagree and correct the statements.

**EXAMPLE:** Coffee is grown in Scotland.
Coffee is not grown in Scotland, it is grown in Brazil.

1. Coca-cola is enjoyed only in China.
2. Cheese is made from water.
3. Meat is bought in museums.
4. Flowers are always grown in villages.
5. Zoos are never visited in winter.
6. Pictures are never stolen from museums.

Make up true sentences using passive voice.

**EXAMPLE:** The rooms/clean/every day.
The rooms are cleaned every day.

or

The rooms are not cleaned every day.

1. Stamps/sell/in post offices.
2. Churches/build/everywhere nowadays.
3. This thing/use/very often.
4. English/speak/in Africa.
5. Many languages/speak/in India.
6. Many American programmes/show/on Russian television nowadays.
Express your doubt.

**Example:** Newspapers are brought in the morning. Are newspapers really brought in the morning?

1. A rose is known as the emblem of England.
2. Songs are sung in music classes.
3. Cars are sold in special shops.
4. Football is played all over the world.
5. Breakfast is cooked in the morning.

We are sure you know now how to invite people to lunch or dinner. But do you remember how to talk at table? Look at the list below.

What would you like to have?
Which vegetables are you going to have?
What kind of salad would you like?
What are you going to have for dessert?\(^1\)
How would you like your eggs?
How do you want your coffee?
Please pass the salt.
Could you pass the sugar, please?

The usual answers to these are:

- I think I'll have potatoes.
- I think I'll have the same.
- I haven't decided yet.
- I'd like soft-boiled eggs.\(^2\)
- I'd like my coffee black.
- Here you are.
- Here it is.
- That sounds great!

Listen to the dialogues, \(\approx\) 38. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) — How do you like your coffee? Would you like it black or white?
— White coffee, please.

\(^1\) for dessert [fə dɪ'zæ:t] — на десерт
\(^2\) soft-boiled eggs — яйца всмятку
— How many lumps\(^1\) of sugar?
— No sugar, thank you.

2) — What would you like for breakfast? Would you like eggs?
— Certainly. I like eggs very much.
— How would you like them soft-boiled or hard-boiled?\(^2\)
— Soft-boiled, please.

3) — Could you pass the butter, please?
— Yes, here you are. What about cheese?
— No cheese, thank you.

4) — What are you going to have for dessert?
— Ice cream, please.
— Chocolate [ˈtʃɒklət] or vanilla [ˈvænɪla]?
— Vanilla ice cream for me, please.
— Here you are.
— Thank you.

5) — What would you like for dinner tonight?
— I haven’t decided yet. What would you like?
— Tomato soup, turkey or chicken.
— That sounds great. I think I’ll have the same.

---

**LET US LEARN**

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess the meaning of the words:

climate [ˈklæmɪt], protect [ˈprəktkt]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

mild, factory, breathe, possible, impossible, harm.

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

**mild** [maɪld] (adj): mild — milder — (the) mildest, mild weather, a mild answer, mild cheese. A mild winter is

\(^1\) lump [læmp] — кусочек (сахара)

\(^2\) hard-boiled eggs — яйца вкрутую
not very cold and snowy. Mild cheese does not have a strong taste. He has too mild a nature to get angry.

climate [ˈklʌmɪt] (n): a dry climate, a mild climate. The doctor told him to spend the winter in South Africa or some other warm climate.

possible [ˈpɒsɪbl] (adj): a possible answer, a possible question, a possible place, a possible time. It is possible to do it today. It is not possible to be in two places at the same time. Come as soon as possible.

impossible [ɪmˈpɒsɪbl] (adj): an impossible person, an impossible visit, an impossible story. It is impossible for me to get there by ten o'clock.

factory [ˈfæktəri] (n): a factory — factories, a small factory, a chocolate factory. People make sweets in factories. My mother works at a factory.

breathe [briːð] (v): to breathe — breathed, to breathe hard, to breathe through the mouth, to breathe deeply. Breathe in! Breathe out! We breathe air. He was breathing hard when he finished his run.

protect [prəˈtɛkt] (v): to protect — protected, to protect children. We wear coats to protect us from the cold. People must protect nature.

harm [hɑːm] (n): a lot of harm, to do harm. He did me no harm. There is no harm in his words. It won't do you any harm to spend more time outdoors.

15 Say what or who(m) people must protect. The words below can help you.

Indian tigers, African elephants, animals, Lake Baikal, nature, little children, dolphins [ˈdɒlfɪnz], plants, fish, water

16 Say what is possible (impossible) for you and your friends to do this week.

EXAMPLE: It is possible to finish reading the book today. It is impossible for you to go to the cinema on Monday. You haven’t prepared your talk yet.
Say in what countries and on what continents the climate is (is not) mild.

Note: The climate is mild if winters are not cold and there is little snow.

Ask your classmates not to do certain things. Explain why.

**EXAMPLE:** Don’t read when it is dark. It will do you a lot of harm.

### LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

**Past Indefinite Passive**

\[ \text{was/were} + \text{Ved/Va} \]

The room was cleaned yesterday.
The houses were built 500 years ago.
America was discovered in 1492.

The room was not cleaned last night.
The Houses of Parliament were not built in the 20th century.
This radio-set was not bought in 1948, it was bought later.

? Was the book sold last week?
Were the churches built last century?

wh? When were the oranges bought?
Where were the cartoons shown?
What was sent to your granny, a letter or a telegram?
Look at the pictures and say when all these things were done.

**EXAMPLE:** The letter was written at 10 o'clock in the morning.

**LET US READ AND LEARN**

20 Listen to the song "Don't Kill the World", p. 39.

**DON'T KILL THE WORLD**

Don’t kill the world!
Don’t let the Earth down!
Do not destroy the ground!
Don't kill the world!

Don't kill the world!
Don't let the Earth die!
Help her to survive!
Don't kill the world!

LET US READ

21 Try and guess what the words mean:

temperature [ˈtempərətər], activity [ˈækтивiti], drinkable
[ˈdrikəbl] (drink + able), freshwater [ˈfreshwɔːtə] (fresh + water),
problem [ˈprɔbləm]

22 Read the text and say why the Earth is in danger.

THE EARTH IS IN DANGER

April 22 is Earth Day. People all over the world think about our planet. They think about air, water, plants and animals on the Earth. They say our planet is in danger. Many people do

1 destroy [dɪˈstrɔɪ] — разрушать
2 survive [səˈvaːrv] — выживать
not know how to protect wild animals and plants, how to keep water clean and the air fresh. But they are ready to do it. They try and help nature.

Water is very important for life on Earth. It is in our oceans, seas, rivers and lakes. There is a lot of water on our planet and at the same time there is little water on it. This is because very little water on Earth is good for drinking. In many rivers and lakes the water is very dirty. Sometimes people cannot swim even in the sea because the sea and the seaside are not clean. In many places the water is not drinkable and it is dangerous to use it when you cook. Even fish die in such water.

For example Lake Baikal is the deepest freshwater lake on Earth. It is 1741 metres deep. The lake is very beautiful but now it is in great danger, because of the factories which are near it. In some places the water in the lake is so dirty that it kills the animals and plants in Baikal and around it.

The way people live has changed the climate on our planet. Nowadays the temperature is rising. You do not have real Russian winter in Moscow any more. In the north of Europe the climate has become milder and warmer too.

If the temperature grows by 3-4 degrees\(^1\) it will become more difficult to live on the planet.

Some people's activities do a lot of harm to the forests. People cut down trees to build farms, homes and roads. Many animals and plants lose their homes. This is bad for the Earth's air too. Modern plants\(^2\) and factories send a lot of smoke into

\(^1\) degree [diˈɡriː] — градус
\(^2\) plant [plænt] — завод
the atmosphere. This is also very bad, because nowadays it's difficult to breathe in big cities.

So, the problem now is to protect life on Earth, and to save our planet for the future.

23 'True' or 'False'.

1. April 22 is Earth Day.
2. People all over the world don’t think about our planet.
3. People know how to protect wild animals and plants.
4. People don’t want to help nature.
5. Water is not important for life on Earth.
6. There is a lot of good clean water on our planet.
7. Lake Baikal is not in danger now.
8. Life on Earth depends on the temperature.
9. Some people do a lot of harm to the forests.
10. People must protect life on Earth.

24 Divide the text into parts and give a name to each of them.

25 Choose a partner and talk to him/her about the text "The Earth Is in Danger".

26 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 22.)

27 Do ex. 10, ex. 19 in writing.

28 Write 10 questions on the text (ex. 22).

29 Express the following in English.

1) Эти дома были построены в прошлом году. 2) В нашей стране строят много новых домов. 3) Масло было куплено вчера. 4) Масло покупают в этом магазине.
5) Сыр делают из молока. 6) Этот суп был сварен (сделан) вчера вечером.

30 Learn to write these words.

mild, climate, possible, impossible, factory, to breathe (breathed),
to protect (protected), harm, to do a lot of harm

Listening Comprehension, 40, text “Bobby’s Answer”
Home Reading Lesson 11, text “The Bald Eagle”

LESSON 11

Review 1

1. Make up as many true sentences as you can.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The orange</th>
<th>smell/smells</th>
<th>nice.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The flowers</td>
<td>taste/tastes</td>
<td>pleasant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The birds</td>
<td>feel/feels</td>
<td>bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The blossoms</td>
<td>sound/sounds</td>
<td>fresh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The river</td>
<td></td>
<td>well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The birds’ songs</td>
<td></td>
<td>sweet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The boys</td>
<td></td>
<td>wonderful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The man</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The apple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The music</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Describe the village you have been to in summer, spring, autumn or winter. Don’t forget to use the following words:

village, breathe, air, fresh, pleasant, to do a lot of good, smell, to be in blossom, purple, climate, mild, high, deep, hide, separate, to be situated
Look at the picture and say what the people were doing when the spaceship landed.

Peter has broken his leg. Say what is possible (impossible) for him to do. The words can help you.

**EXAMPLE:** It's impossible for him to run.

read, dance, sing, play chess, play the piano, play football, swim, listen to the radio

Say how people can protect plants, animals and birds when they are in danger.

1 break [breik] (broke; broken) — ломать
What do you know about Lake Baikal? Why is its water dangerous for fish and even people now?

Work in pairs. Read the questions. Answer them.

1. When was Moscow founded?
2. When was America discovered?
3. What are tables usually made of?
4. Where is coffee grown?
5. Where are books sold?
6. What is usually cooked for breakfast in your family (in England)?

People often do a lot of harm to nature. Can you tell your classmates some facts about it? What must people do to save plants, birds and animals?

Choose and read aloud as quickly as you can the words on the topic "The Earth Is in Danger".

Theatre, book, school, lamp, bell, breathe, protect, save, kill, to do a lot of harm, kitchen, factory, cinema, climate, in blossom, temperature, car, smell.

Have you ever read any old tales? This is one of them. Read it and say why the hungry lion didn’t eat Androcles [ænˈdɹəkliːz].

ANDROCLES AND THE LION

Androcles was a slave. He ran through the forest. He wanted to hide among high trees. He wanted to run far from the village where he lived and was a slave. He thought his life was very hard, in fact it was impossible. Androcles wanted to save his life in the forest. Suddenly he saw a big lion. Nobody else was seen near him. Androcles became afraid but understood that the lion couldn’t do him any harm. The lion was breath-

1 slave [sliːv] — pað
ng hard. He wanted to show Androcles that something was wrong with his paw.¹ The lion couldn’t speak the language of people but he wanted to say: “Save me! Protect me! Help me!”

Androcles looked at the lion’s paw and discovered a large thorn² in it. It was hidden deep in the paw. Androcles took it away. The lion was happy. They became friends and the lion brought him food every day.

But one day the Emperor’s³ people caught both Androcles and his friend the lion.

They brought them to Rome and separated them. They didn’t give any food to the lion. He became very hungry and then they gave him Androcles to eat. But the lion was his real friend. He didn’t kill Androcles. He was happy to see his friend.

¹ paw [pɔː] — лапа
² thorn [θɔːn] — колючка, шип
³ emperor [ı'mpaːrər] — император
The Emperor couldn't understand it. Androcles was brought to him and he told the Emperor his story. The Emperor gave food to the lion and let them both go away.

11 Find and read the sentences which describe the pictures.

12 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer.

13 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 10.)

**LET US WRITE**

14 Write not less than 10 questions on the text.

15 Do you know any tale? Write it down in a few sentences.
THE GEOGRAPHY AND POLITICAL OUTLOOK OF THE UK

LESSON 12

LET US REVIEW

1. Say:
   a) what you used [just] to do last summer;
   b) what things you used [just] yesterday:
      — to cook dinner;
      — to write a letter;
      — to prepare a talk on the History of the USA;
      — to make a picture.

   EXAMPLE: 1) I used to swim a lot last summer.
   2) I used meat to cook dinner.

2. Work in pairs and talk about what you were doing at different times yesterday. Don't forget to change over.

   EXAMPLE: P₁: What were you doing at 1 o'clock yesterday?
   P₂: I was having lunch.

3. Complete the text (using the present or the past passive) and read it to your classmates:

   England (separate) from Scotland by mountains. It (wash) by the North Sea. The main cities of England (situate) in the centre of the country. London, its capital, (found) many centuries ago. It used to be a port too. A lot of goods¹

¹ goods [gudz] — товары
(bring) to London from many countries now. Many different things (sell) in the shops and streets of London. London (visit) by many tourists every year.

4 Pretend you are a teacher, read the questions for your classmates to answer. The words below can help them.

**EXAMPLE:** — Why have you bought these daffodils?  
— They smelled so nice!

| to sound loud, to smell nice, to smell pleasant, to taste sweet, to taste good, to feel bad, to feel well |

1. Why did you turn off the radio?  
2. Why have you eaten the whole cake?  
3. Why didn’t you go to school yesterday?  
4. Why have you put these lilies here?  
5. Why do you like honey?  
6. Why don’t you take aspirin [ˈæsprɪn]?

5 We are sure you know how to say that you like or dislike something. Look at the list below.

| I like it. | I really like it very much. |
| I like it very much. | I love it. |
| I like it a lot. |

Don’t forget it in such sentences:

| I like it when it rains. |
| I like it when it’s warm outdoors. |
| I like it when my mother reads to me. |

This is how you can ask for a person’s opinion.

| Do you like it? | Is this OK? |
| Do you really like it? | Is this all right? |
| How do you like it? |
This is the way to say that you don’t like this or that.

I don’t like it. I don’t like it a bit.
I don’t like it at all. I can’t stand it.

Listen to the dialogues, 41. Read and learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) — Do you like it when it rains?
— Yes, I do. I like rainy weather.
— Do you really like it?
— Of course I do. It’s my favourite weather.

2) — How much do you like it?
— I like it very much. It’s really very good.
— Do you like the colour?
— Oh, yes, I do. I love it.

3) — Do you like it?
— I am afraid I don’t like it.
— Not a bit?
— Not a bit.
— Not at all?
— Not at all. I hate it. I can’t stand it.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Who is at home now? My parents are.
Who has the dog? Nick has. (I have.)
Who went there last night? We all did.
Who can speak Chinese? Nobody here can.

But:
Which of you is Ann? She is. (I am.)

1 I can’t stand it.— Не выношу этого.
Which of you knows French?
Which of you has a pet?
Which of you went to the museum after classes?
Which of you has bought the magazine?

We all do. (He does.)
Boris and Peter have.
They did.
I have.

7  Answer the questions.
1. Who discovered America?
2. Who has turned off the washing machine?
3. Which of you is Susan?
4. Which of them works at the factory?
5. Which of the flowers smells nice?

8  Express the following in English.
1) Кто защищает животных на нашей планете? — Люди. 2) Кто из вас поедет в Лондон? — Мы. 3) Кто из них продолжит эту работу? — Петр и Анна. 4) Кто покупает газеты в вашей семье? — Мой папа. 5) Кто из вас выращивал примулы в саду прошлым летом? — Моя сестра. 6) Что встает на востоке? — Солнце.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Reported Speech

Nick says: “I like my granny very much.”
Nick says (that) he likes his granny very much.

Nelly says: “I wrote a letter to my parents the other day.”
Nelly says (that) she wrote a letter to her parents the other day.

The Browns say: “We’ve moved into a new flat. Our flat is large.”
The Browns say (that) they have moved into a new flat. Their flat is large.

The brothers say: "We won't clean our flat now. We'll do it later."
The brothers say (that) they won't clean their flat now, they will do it later.

+/!

Nick says: "Betty, give me some bread, please!" Nick asks Betty to give him some bread. Nick tells Betty to give him some bread.

The teacher says: "Learn this poem by heart!" The teacher asks the pupils to learn this poem by heart. The teacher tells the pupils to learn this poem by heart.

-/!

Mother says: "Don't open the window! It is cold in here." Mother asks me not to open the window because it is cold in here.

My aunt says to me: "Don't go there!" My aunt asks me not to go there. My aunt tells me not to go there.

9 Put the following sentences into reported speech. Make all the necessary changes.

**EXAMPLE:** Helen says: "Don't come back late, Susan!" Helen tells Susan not to come back late.

1. The people say: "Many animals are in danger."
2. Nick's granny says: "Don't do any harm to the chrysanthemums, Nick!"
3. The teacher says: "Don’t speak so loudly, Betty!"
4. My grandpa says: "I like spring when all the fruit trees are in blossom."
5. Bob’s cousin shouts to him: "Come here! Be quick."
6. My teacher says: "Speak English in class, boys."

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

industry [ˈindəstri], industrial [ɪnˈdɑːstriəl], official [əˈfɪʃl], careful [ˈkɛəfl] (careful), carefully

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

kingdom
consist (of)
as well
state
sign
saint
to be surprised
especially
lonely
c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words:

kingdom [ˈkɪndəm] (n): a kingdom — kingdoms. ‘A kingdom’ is a country ruled by a king or a queen.
state [steɪt] (n): a state — states. ‘A state’ is a country with its people living together under one government. What is the official name of this state?
sign [sən] (n): a sign — signs. A dark cloud is a sign of rain. The sign on the door of the shop said: “Closed on Sunday.”
industry [ˈɪndəstri] (n): an industry — industries. What are the important industries of this country?
industrial [ɪnˈdɑːstriəl] (adj): The United States is an industrial country. Are there any industrial cities in the south of England?
saint [seɪnt] (n): a saint — saints. 1. Do you know any saints of the Russian Church? 2. The little boy thought his granny was a saint, she always helped him.
consist (of) [kənˈsɪst] (v): A year consists of twelve months.
to be surprised (at) (v): Nick is not surprised at the information. We are all surprised at the latest news.

lonely ['ləʊnli] (adj): lonely — lonelier — the loneliest. She is a very lonely person. Bob felt lonely at the new school. A person feels lonely when he is unhappy because he is alone.

careful ['kəfʊl] (adj): careful — more careful — the most careful. A person is careful when he thinks about what he is doing or saying. Be more careful with your work. Is she always careful?

careless ['kəlɪs] (adj): He is a very careless driver. Jean was careless when she was running downstairs and she fell. Don’t be careless!

carefully ['kəfəli] (adv), carelessly ['kəlɪslɪ] (adv): You must write more carefully, you make so many mistakes. Don’t do your work carelessly!

especially ['espeʃlɪ] (adv): I like the country especially in spring. This is an especially busy day.

11 Say: a) what days a week consists of; b) what months winter and summer consist of; c) how many rooms your flat (house) consists of.

12 Answer the questions.

1. What industrial cities do you know in Russia?
2. When do people feel lonely?
3. What is the usual sign of rain?
4. Why don’t children go to school in summer?
5. When and where must people be careful?

13 Give it a name:

a) a country ruled by a king;
b) a country with its people living together under one government.
WHAT ARE LITTLE BOYS MADE OF?

What are little boys made of?
What are little boys made of?
Frogs and snails\(^1\) and puppy-dogs' tails,
And that's what little boys are made of!

What are little girls made of?
What are little girls made of?
Sugar and spice\(^2\) and all things nice,
And that's what little girls are made of!

---

1. snail [snɛl] — улитка
2. spice [speis] — пряность
3. the Welsh (the Welsh language) — валлийский язык (язык Уэльса)
THE LAND AND THE PEOPLE
OF GREAT BRITAIN

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (the UK) is the official name of the state which is situated in the British Isles. Thus, “Great Britain” is often the same as “Britain” and refers1 only to Scotland, England and Wales. The “United Kingdom”, or the “UK” includes Northern Ireland. It consists of four countries which are England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. You can see them on the map. Their capitals are London, Edinburgh, Cardiff and Belfast.

The UK is an island state. The two main islands are Great Britain (where England, Scotland and Wales are situated) and Ireland. Northern Ireland and the independent Irish Republic are there. The two islands are separated by the Irish Sea.

The UK is separated from the continent by the English Channel and the Straits of Dover. Once the British Isles used to be a part of the continent. The nearest point to Europe is the Straits of Dover. The UK is also washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the north and the North Sea in the east.

Everyone who was born in Britain is British. People from England are English. People from Scotland, Wales or Northern Ireland are not English. They are Scottish or Scots; Welsh and Irish. People from Scotland and Wales don’t like it when they are called English but they are British.

More than 56 million people live in Britain. Many of them live in big industrial cities like London, Manchester and Liverpool, for example, are big industrial cities in the centre of England. But foreigners are often surprised by the fact that much of the land in Britain is open country. There are many lonely hills, quiet rivers, deep lakes and farmlands especially in the south of the country.

Everyone in Britain speaks English, but in some parts of Scotland and Wales people speak different languages as well.

1 refer to — относиться к
THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND NORTHERN IRELAND

THE BRITISH ISLES

THE IRISH REPUBLIC

NORTHERN IRELAND

IRELAND

THE ATLANTIC OCEAN

THE NORTH SEA

LONDON

BIRMINGHAM

CARDIFF

SHEFFIELD

MANCHESTER

LIVERPOOL

BELFAST

EDINBURGH
The Welsh are especially proud of their language. They like to speak Welsh, to sing songs in Welsh and when you travel you can see road signs in Welsh all over Wales.

Everyone in the UK speaks English but they all speak it differently. A Scottish person has to listen carefully if he wants to understand a Londoner or a Welsh person.

As you know, the flag of the United Kingdom is known as the Union Jack. It is made up of three crosses: the cross of St. George (the patron saint of England), the cross of St. Andrew (the patron saint of Scotland) and the cross of St. Patrick (the patron saint of Ireland).

Now you have learnt some more facts about the UK. Could you answer the questions?

1. Where is the UK situated?
2. Why do you think the UK is called “an island state”?
3. What other country is situated in the British Isles?
4. What languages are spoken in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland?
5. How many people live in Britain?
6. What is the Union Jack? What do you know about it?

Reference Material

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (the UK)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Capital</th>
<th>People</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Great Britain</td>
<td>England</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>the British</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td></td>
<td>London</td>
<td>the English</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wales</td>
<td></td>
<td>Edinburgh</td>
<td>the Scots</td>
<td>Scottish/English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Ireland</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardiff</td>
<td>the Welsh</td>
<td>Welsh/English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Belfast</td>
<td>the Irish</td>
<td>Irish/English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18. Look through the *Reference Material*, and the map and name:
- the parts (countries) the UK consists of, and their capitals;
- the people who live in the UK and the languages they speak;
- big industrial cities of Britain;
- water bodies around the UK;
- water bodies that separate Britain from the continent.

19. Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 16.)

20. Do you know any other facts about the land and people of Britain? Tell your classmates about them.

---

**LET US WRITE**

21. Do ex. 3, 8 in writing.

22. Look at Betty and tell your classmates what she says.

**EXAMPLE:** Betty says (that) her native country is Britain.

1. My native country is Britain.
2. Don't be surprised at this song!
3. Our country consists of four parts.
4. Come to see me, Nell. I feel lonely!
5. Be careful in this cold climate.
6. Protect the flowers from the cold.
Copy the table below and fill it in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Capital</th>
<th>People</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardiff</td>
<td>the English</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write the pronunciation of the underlined words. (See "Look, Read and Remember!", p. 84–85.)

**Example:** I used [jʊst] to swim a lot when I spent my holiday at the seaside.

1. Mr Brown *used* to live in Scotland when he was a small boy. Now he lives in Wales.
2. I *used* my notes to prepare for the history class.
3. They *used* to work at the factory when they were young.
4. He *used* his book of fairy tales and read them to his son.
5. The children *used* their imagination to write a story about life in the past.

Learn to write these words.

*kingdom, state, sign, industry, industrial, saint, consist of, surprise, be surprised at, lonely, careful, careless, carefully, carelessly, especially*

**Listening Comprehension, □ 43, text “I Hit Him Back First”**

**Home Reading Lesson 12, text “Climate, Weather and Wildlife”**
LESSON 13

LET US REVIEW

1. Look at the pictures and say what Pete's breakfast, lunch and dinner consisted of last Thursday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Breakfast</th>
<th>Lunch</th>
<th>Dinner</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Egg and toast, coffee, juice</td>
<td>Salad, fruit, soup</td>
<td>Grilled steak, vegetables, soup</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**EXAMPLE:**

P₁: (Nick): My supper consisted of chicken and vegetables.

P₂: Nick says his supper consisted of chicken and vegetables.

3. Say what countries the UK consists of.
4 Name some industrial cities you know in Russia, the UK and other countries.

5 Think of something you were surprised at in stories (books, pictures, games, etc.).

**EXAMPLE:** I was surprised at her visit.

6 Say when and why the people were surprised:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>My dad</th>
<th>was</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The brothers</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nell's cousin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs Green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Browns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Work in pairs. Make sentences. Here are the word combinations for you to use:

- an independent state
- a well-known saint
- a usual sign
- a lonely man
- careful work
- a careless driver
- a peaceful kingdom

**EXAMPLE:** P₁: a well-known saint
P₂: St. Patrick is a well-known saint in Ireland.

8 Look at the pictures on the next page and say what the students tell Mr Jones.

**EXAMPLE:** Jim says he likes fruit, especially bananas.
1. Come again, please.

2. We are always glad to see you!

3. We are going to Wales in May!

4. I have written a story.

5. I will spend a month in Scotland.

6. Don’t forget to write to us.

7. My birthday is in three weeks’ time.

8. I like fruit, especially bananas.

9. You know that English people often begin talking about weather when they meet each other. These are the usual phrases:

   It’s nice day today, isn’t it?
   Fine weather we are having today!
   What a beautiful day! Not a cloud in the sky!
It's hot (warm) today!
It's hot and humid! "
It's much too hot today!

If the weather is not that perfect you may say:

It looks like rain / snow. It's cold outside!
I hope it's not going to snow. It's bitter cold. "
It's freezing. "

Sometimes people ask questions about weather:

What's the weather like today?
Is it sunny (foggy, dry, rainy, cloudy)?
How's the weather?
Is it going to rain?
Do you think it's going to be a nice day?

The usual phrases to go on with your talk are:

It sure is. It sure does.
Yes, it is. Yes, it does.
I think it is. I think it does.
It certainly is. It certainly does.

Listen to the dialogues, p. 44. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) — What's the weather like today? Is it sunny?
   — It sure is. Dry and warm with just a light breeze.
2) — Is it going to rain?
   — I hope not, though it looks like rain. There are many dark clouds in the sky and a cold wind is blowing. "
3) — It’s a nice day today, isn’t it?
   — It certainly is. Not a cloud in the sky, but 30 degrees above zero\(^1\) is too hot, much too hot.
   — Oh, yes. It’s hot and humid.
   — Is it usual summer weather in Moscow?
   — Maybe “yes” and maybe “no”. It depends, you know.
4) — It’s cold outside. It’s bitter cold.
   — Is it going to snow?
   — I’m not sure but I hope so. The weather will be milder then.
5) — Does it look like rain?
   — It certainly does.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

My dog is clever.
I’m a student.
They have a car.
You look wonderful!
Nelly lives in Paris.
I was at home last night.
You can swim well.
He lived in London in 1993.
They wrote a letter to Mr Brown.
We have bought some apples.
I will go to India.

So is his dog.
So are we.
So has he. (So does he.)
So do you.
So does John.
So were we.
So can Nick.
So did I.
So did they.

Say that people can do (did, will do) the same things that you can.

1. I can dance, and so ... Pete.
2. I like ice cream, and so ... my sister.

\(^1\) 30 degrees above zero [dɪˈgrɪs əˈhæv ’ziːrəʊ] — 30 градусов выше нуля
3. I spent my holiday in the mountains, and so ... my parents.
4. I will go to the South in summer. So ... my friends.
5. I have many friends. So ... Nick.
6. I was at home on Sunday evening. So ... my grandparents.
7. My brother swims well. So ... I.
8. Ann will go to the theatre tonight. So ... I.

12 Work in pairs. Say that you can/will do (would like to do) something or that you could (liked, did, have done) something. Let your friend say that he can do (likes to do, etc.) the same. Don't forget to change over.

**EXAMPLE:** P₁: I can swim like a fish. P₂: So can I.
P₂: I like oranges. P₁: So do I.

### LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

**Reported Speech**

?  
1. She asks: “Is Wales situated in the British Isles?”
   *She asks [if] Wales is situated in the British Isles.*
2. They ask: “Did it snow yesterday?”
   *They want to know [if] it snowed yesterday.*
3. Nelly asks: “Have you been to Spain?”
   *Nelly is interested [if] I have been to Spain.*
4. Bob asks: “Will it be possible?”
   *Bob wonders [if] it will be possible.*

**wh?**

1. She asks: “Where is Wales situated?”
   *She wonders where Wales is situated.*
2. They ask: "When did it snow?"
   They want to know when it snowed.
3. Nelly asks: "Where have you been?"
   Nelly is interested where I have been.
4. Bob asks: "Why will it be possible?"
   Bob wonders why it will be possible.
5. She asks: "How many countries are there in the UK?"
   She wonders how many countries there are in the UK.

Say what the people want to know.

Mr Brown: "What is the capital of the United Kingdom?"
Mary: "Is Scotland an independent state?"
Billy: "Why is my cousin so careless?"
The Davidsons: "How many industrial cities are there in the North?"
The teacher: "When will you go to Africa?"
The doctor: "How do you feel?"

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

symbol [ˈsɪmbl]        empire [ˈempaɪə]
colony [ˈkɒləni]       politician [ˌpɒlɪˈtɪʃn]
prince [prɪns]         aristocrat [ˈærɪstəkræt]
princess [ˌprɪnsəs]     permanent [ˈpɜːrəmənt]
Ceylon [ˈsɛlən]        policy [ˈpɒləsi]
Head of State

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

power                  royal
           to include former
           to offer      law
lawyer                 to delay
           to elect     to belong (to)

(c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

power [ˈpaʊər] (n): It is out of my power to help you. The power of the church is great in the country. Does the Queen have real power in the UK?
belong (to) [bɪ'ləʊn] (v): belong — belonged. It is my book. It belongs to me. He belongs to this school. What club do you belong to? He never belonged to this group. I don’t belong here.

royal [rɔ'jɔl] (adj): ‘Royal’ means belonging to a king or queen. The royal family, the royal prince, a royal palace. The royal family lives in the palace. Does he belong to the Royal Society?

include [ɪn'kluːd] (v): include — included. I included eggs in my shopping list. Anna was not included as a guest. You don’t have to buy batteries [bætənɪz] with that toy because they are already included.

former [fɔr'mər] (adj): ‘Former’ means belonging to the past: in former times, in former days, in a former life, the former state, the former Soviet Union. Do you know the former President of the State (the one before the latest)?

offer [ˈɔfər] (v): offer — offered. He offered to help me with the washing up. He offered me his help and advice. Does he ever offer you any money?

law [lɔː] (n): a law — laws. ‘A law’ is a rule made by government for all the people in a state or country. Laws tell people what they must do and what they must not do.

lawyer [ˈlɔːجا] (n): a lawyer — lawyers. A lawyer is a person who knows much about the law.

delay [dɪˈleɪ] (v): delay — delayed. We must delay our journey. Bob is ill. My work delayed me at the office. The train was delayed two hours by the heavy snowfall. — Why was the start of the game delayed? — It was delayed because of the rain.

elect [ɪˈlekt] (v): elect — elected. ‘To elect’ means to choose someone by vote. They elected the President. People in Britain elect members of Parliament every five years.

permanent [ˈpɜːmənənt] (adj): a permanent job, permanent address. Do you have a permanent job here? I don’t know his permanent address.

1 society [ˈsəʊsiəti] — общество
2 by vote [vɔt] — голосованием
15 Give it a name:

— belonging to a king or a queen;
— belonging to the past;
— to choose by vote;
— a rule made by government for all the people of the country;
— a person who knows much about the law.

16 Look at the pictures and say what belongs to Jim and what to Caroline.

**EXAMPLE:** The ball belongs to Jim.

17 Natasha’s mother asked her to buy the following things: vegetables, bread, cheese, butter, apples, sugar, oranges, meat, fish. Look at her shopping list and say which of the things are included in it and which are not.

18 Say what John offers to do for his granny.

**EXAMPLE:** John offers his granny to go shopping.

1. Shall I go shopping?
2. Shall I water the poppies?
3. Shall I put the lilies in the vase?
4. Shall I clean the floor?
5. Shall I wash up?

19 Say why the football game was delayed. Use the following:
- because of the rain,
- because of the weather,
- because of the snow,
- because the captain was ill,
- because the football players were late.

**Example:** The game was delayed because of the rain.

---

**LET US READ AND LEARN**

20 Listen to the poem "The King's Bread and Butter", p. 45, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

**THE KING'S BREAD AND BUTTER**

*(by A. A. Milne)*

I

The King asked
The Queen, and
The Queen asked
The Dairymaid:
"Could we have some butter for
The Royal slice of bread?"
The Queen asked
The Dairymaid,
The Dairymaid
Said: "Certainly,
I'll go and tell

---

1 *dairymaid* [dɛərmɑɪd] — доярка, работница на молочной ферме
2 *slice* [slʌs] — ломтик, тоненький кусочек
The Cow
Now
Before she goes to bed.”

II

The Dairymaid
She curtsied\(^1\)
And went and told
The Alderney:\(^2\)
“Don’t forget the butter for
The Royal slice of bread.”
The Alderney
Said sleepily:
“You’d better tell
His Majesty\(^3\)
That many people nowadays
Like marmalade \([\text{mærmələd}]\)
Instead.”

---

21 Do you want to know who rules the country in Britain? If you do, read the text.

**THE QUEEN AND PARLIAMENT**

It is rather difficult to understand the British way of ruling the country. In Britain the Queen is the Head of State, but in fact she doesn’t rule the country as she has no power. The Queen is the symbol of the country, its history and its traditions. She is very rich. She travels about the United Kingdom, meets different people and visits schools, hospitals and other special places. So do all the members of the Royal Family: the Queen’s husband, her son Prince Charles, the Queen’s daughter Princess Anne and Princess Margaret, the Queen’s sister.

---

\(^1\) curtsy \([\text{kərˈsəsi}\]) — делать реперанис
\(^2\) Alderney \([\text{ˈɔldəni}\]) — Буренка (порода коров)
\(^3\) His Majesty \([\text{ˈhaɪz meɪˈʃi]}\) — Его Величество
At the beginning of the 20th century many countries all over the world were ruled by Britain. Among them were the British colonies and they were all part of the British Empire. India, Pakistan and Ceylon, for example, were also part of the Empire. Now these countries are independent states. But in 1949 Britain and the former colonies founded the Commonwealth. The Commonwealth includes many countries such as Canada, Australia, New Zealand and others. The Queen of Great Britain is also the Head of the Commonwealth and the Queen of Canada, Australia and New Zealand.

The real power in the country belongs to the British Parliament and to the British Government. The British Parliament has two houses: the House of Commons and the House of Lords. The House of Lords does not have much power but it is very important as it can discuss and change laws, it can delay laws too. The House of Commons makes laws about the policy of the country, taxes and many other things.

the Commonwealth [ˈkɒmənwəð] — Содружество наций
the House of Commons — палата общин
the House of Lords — палата лордов
taxes [ˈteksɪz] — налоги
The members of the House of Lords are not elected, they are selected. These members are permanent. They are often aristocrats, people of the church, lawyers and former politicians or life peers.

The members of the House of Commons are elected. The British people elect 650 members of the House of Commons every five years.

22. Read the answers to the following questions from the text.

1. Who is the Head of State in Britain?
2. Does the Queen rule the country?
3. What does the Queen do?
4. What do you know about the Royal Family?
5. What countries were included into the British Empire at the beginning of the 20th century?
6. What happened in 1949?
7. Who does the real power in Britain belong to?

1 to select [sɛlkt] — отбирать
2 a peer [piə] — пэр
8. What do you know about the British Parliament?
9. Why is the House of Lords important?
10. How often do the British people elect members of the House of Commons?

Divide the text into logical parts and name them.

**LET US TALK**

24. Look through the text (ex. 21) again and get ready to talk to your classmates about the Queen and Parliament in Britain.

25. Imagine that one of your classmates hasn’t read the text. Tell him/her everything you know about:
   - the Queen of the UK, of England, Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales and the dominions overseas;
   - the British Parliament.

26. Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 21.)

**LET US WRITE**

27. Express the following in English,
   1) Мне нравится, когда идет снег. 2) Мне нравится, когда на улице тепло. 3) Никому не нравится, когда его друзья приходят к нему. 4) Мне нравится, когда деревья в цвету. 5) Нам не нравится, когда ты получаешь такие письма. 6) Нам не нравится, когда они громко разговаривают.

28. Do ex. 8, ex. 13 in writing.

29. Give the main ideas of the text (ex. 21) writing it out in not more than 10 sentences.
Learn to write these words.

- power, to belong to, royal, to include, former, to offer, law, lawyer, to delay, to elect, permanent

Listening Comprehension, 46, text “A Tragedy in the Air”

Home Reading Lesson 13, text “Rumpelstiltskin,” part I

LESSON 14

LET US REVIEW

1. Look through the list of words and group them into 4 categories. First read out verbs, then nouns, adjectives and adverbs.

   Kingdom, power, state, belong, sign, royal, industry, include, industrial, law, elect, consist, careful, offer, lawyer, delay, carefully, lonely, permanent, be surprised, especially, former.

2. Say it right. How many true sentences can you make?

   It is out of his her theirs your our power to help to change to offer the government. the plan. the laws. help. the lawyer. the life of people.

3. Play the ‘Champion’ game. Who can make up more sentences with: the royal family, in former days, offer, delay, elect?

4. Try and think of some statements using: belong, it’s out of (in) his (her) power to help ..., include, lawyer, permanent. Say them to your classmates and let them agree or disagree.
Ask questions for more information.
1. It belongs to him.
2. He offered it.
3. It was delayed.

Look through the dialogue. Change it into reported speech and then read it aloud. Don’t forget to use the following: wonders, wants to know, is interested.

**EXAMPLE:**
David says he likes travelling.
Mary says so does she. She says she always goes to different places.
David wants to know if Mary’s dad goes with her.

*David:* I like travelling.
*Mary:* So do I. I always go to different places.
*David:* Does your dad go with you?
*Mary:* Sometimes he does. He very much likes to travel by car.
*David:* Where do you usually go?
*Mary:* We often go to the mountains. We are going to the Oka soon. Come with us, David.
*David:* Thank you, Mary. I’d love to.

It is usual for people to pay compliments [ˈkɒmplɪmənts]. Do you remember the way to do it?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compliment</th>
<th>Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You look wonderful today.</td>
<td>That’s a nice dress!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You look great!</td>
<td>Those are nice trousers!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What a good book!</td>
<td>That’s a nice colour, it suits you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What wonderful pictures!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

People usually receive compliments in this way:

*So do you.*
*Thank you. I’m glad you like it.*
*Thanks a lot. I’m very glad you like it.*
*Thank you. You’re very kind.*
*Thanks. You’re really very kind.*
Listen to the dialogues, p. 47. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) — You look wonderful today!
   — So do you.
   — Those are nice shoes.
   — Thank you. I'm glad you like them.

2) — What wonderful pictures! Have you drawn them yourself?
   — Yes, I have. Thanks. You're very kind.

3) — That's a nice colour, it suits you.
   — Thank you. I'm very glad you like it.

4) — What a tasty cake! I like it very much.
   — Thank you. You are very kind.
   — No, I mean it. I really mean it. Your cake is really very good.

Compliment your classmate on his/her clothes, his/her looks, his/her work and his/her house. Let him/her answer you. Act the dialogues out.

---

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

**should/shouldn't + V**

- You **should** do it.  
  - It is a good thing for you to do it.  
  - It is the right thing for you to do it.  
  - I advise you to do it.

- You **should be** more careful!
- Nick **should** go there with them.
- You **shouldn't** tell lies.
- She **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I think we **should** eat out.
- I think Mary **should** join us.
I don't think you should do it.
I don't think you should buy it.

Must is stronger than should.
You must go there! (It's your duty!)^1
You should go there! (It's my advice.)

10 Choose the correct verb. Complete these sentences with should or shouldn't.

**EXAMPLE:** You should sit quietly.

Speak, eat, play, say, sit, put.

1. You ... quietly.
2. You ... slowly.
3. You ... in the street.
4. You ... your fingers in your mouth.
5. You ... when someone else is talking.
6. You ... loudly.
7. You ... “Thank you” when you get a compliment.

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

*either ... or ...*

Come either today or tomorrow.
He is either in Paris or in London.
Either my father or my brothers are coming.
*But:*
Either my brothers or my father is coming.

11 Express the following in English.

1) Сделай это либо сегодня, либо завтра. 2) Купи или яблоки, или апельсинки. 3) Он будет или адвокатом, или ученым. 4) Или мои сестры, или мой брат собираются

^duty [djutı] - долг
These are the words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean;

phrase [frəʊz] continent ['kɒntɪnənt]
topic ['tɒpɪk] continental ['kɒntɪnentl]
Latin [ˈlætɪn] humour [ˈhjuəmə]
Greek [ɡriːk] respectable [ˈrespektəbl]
table manners [ˈmænəz]

You know the word combination to tell a lie. What do you think the verb to lie means?

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

way respect knowledge
hardly ever knife offend
show off seldom fork
sense dull

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

way [weɪ] (n): way — ways. ‘A way’ is a method or plan to do something. This is not the way to do it. The prince thought of a way to take the power. What is the right way to address the Queen? Foreign countries have a different way of life.

seldom [ˈsɛldəm] (adv): ‘Seldom’ means not often. I seldom see my friend now that he has moved to another city. She seldom, if ever, reads a book. ‘Very seldom’ means hardly ever. We go to the theatre very seldom. We hardly ever go to the theatre.

dull [dʌl] (adj): dull — duller — (the) dullest. A thing is dull if it is not interesting, if it is boring. A dull book (film, story, play, performance), etc. The film was so dull that Kate left before it was over.

knowledge [ˈnəʊlɪdʒ] (n): Knowledge is all that is known. Does he have good knowledge of the French language? My knowledge of Russian history is not very good.
show off [ʃəu ˈɒf] (v): to show off one's knowledge, to show off one's clothes. He is a boaster and always shows off. He knows much, but I don't like the way he shows off his knowledge. Does he ever show off his clothes?

sense [sɛns] (n): a sense — senses, a sense of humour, a sense of duty. My cousin John never comes on time. He has no sense of time. Do you agree that the English have a wonderful sense of humour?

offend [əˈfend] (v): to offend — offended. His words offended me. I'm sorry if I've offended you. Are you sure he was offended by my words? She was offended by her husband.

respect [rɪˈspekt] (v): to respect — respected. We respect our teachers. People should respect the law. I never promised to respect your feelings.

respectable [rɪˈspektəbl] (adj): He is not a respectable man.

a fork [fɔːk] (n), a fork — forks.

a knife [naɪf] (n), a knife — knives.

a spoon [spʊn] (n), a spoon — spoons.

13 Give it a name:
— a method or plan to do something;
— not often;
— very seldom;
— boring, not interesting;
— all that is known.

14 Say it right. How many true sentences can you make?

You should
You shouldn't

show off.
get a deep knowledge.
offend people.
lie.
look respectable.
have a sense of humour.
15  a) Look at the picture to know how to set the table.

EXAMPLE: You should put a big knife for meat to the right of the plate.

b) Say how to set the table.

LET US READ AND LEARN

16  Listen to the poem “Take Your Elbows Off the Table”, 48, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

TAKE YOUR ELBOWS OFF THE TABLE

(by Caroline Graham)

Take your elbows off the table,
Keep those big feet on the floor.
Take your hat off when you come in.
You’re not outside
Anymore.

1 elbow [ˈelbəʊ] — локоть
Keep your mouth shut\(^1\) when you’re eating.
If you’re hungry,
Ask for more.
But take your elbows off the table,
And keep those big feet on the floor.

**LET US READ**

17 Read the text to find out the differences between the British and the continental ways of life. Do you think the writer of the text has got a sense of humour?

**THE BRITISH WAY OF LIFE**

During your four years of English classes you have already learnt a lot about the language and the people who speak it. Here are some facts about the British way if you want to compare it with life on the continent.

In England many things are the other way round.\(^2\) On the continent people seldom speak about the weather. If they do, it usually means they have no other topics to discuss. In England, if you don’t repeat the phrase “It’s a nice day today, isn’t it?” two hundred times a day people are surprised and think that you are very dull. On the continent Sunday papers\(^3\) appear on Monday; in England (the country is really hard to understand) they appear on Sunday. On the continent, some people like cats, others don’t, but in England cats are very special animals. Everyone loves them and takes care of them.

On the continent people are proud of the things they know. They try to show off their knowledge and often quote\(^4\) Greek and Latin writers. In England only those who don’t know them or who haven’t read them do it.

You can offend people on the continent in many ways, for

\(^1\) keep ... shut — держать закрытым
\(^2\) the other way round — наоборот
\(^3\) papers — newspapers and magazines
\(^4\) quote [kwɒt] — цитировать
example, if you laugh at them or make jokes about their life and work.

But the English accept everything with a sense of humour. You can offend them only if you tell them they have no sense of humour.

People on the continent either tell you the truth or lie, in England they hardly ever lie, but they don’t tell you the truth either.

On Sundays on the continent even the poorest person puts on his best suit and tries to look nice and respectable. In England even the richest man dresses in some old clothes and doesn’t shave.1

Many continentals think life is a game; the English think cricket is a game. On the continent people have good food. In England people have good table manners.

**Table Manners**

1. You should sit up straight.
2. You shouldn’t eat with your fingers.
3. You shouldn’t put your elbows on the table.
4. You should put your dirty knife, spoon and fork on your plate.
5. You shouldn’t talk with your mouth full.
6. You shouldn’t lick your fingers.
7. You should say “Thank you” after the meal.

Here are some facts about life on the continent. Find in the text and read out the same information about the British way.

**On the continent:**

— People seldom speak about weather.
— Sunday papers appear on Monday.
— Some people like cats, others don’t.
— People are proud of the things they know. They try to show off their knowledge ...
— You can offend people in many ways: if you laugh at them or make jokes about their life and work.

1 shave [ʃaiv] — бриться
2 lick [lɪk] — облизывать, лизать
— People either tell you the truth or lie.
— On Sundays even the poorest person puts on his best suit and tries to look nice and respectable.
— Many continentals think life is a game.
— People have good food.

Grandmother Lou is taking her grandchildren out for a meal. But they don’t have good table manners. Look at the picture and say which child she is talking to.

**EXAMPLE:** Grandmother Lou tells Bill not to put his elbows on the table.

1. You shouldn’t put your elbows on the table.
2. You should sit up straight.
3. You should put your dirty knife and fork on the plate.
4. You shouldn’t eat with your fingers.
5. You shouldn’t lick your fingers.
6. You shouldn’t lick your knife.
LET US TALK

20. Now you know some differences between the British and the continental ways of life. Name them, please.

21. Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 17.)

22. What about Russian table manners? Say a few words about them.

23. We are sure you've got a younger brother, sister or cousin. Tell him (her) what table manners they should have.

LET US WRITE

24. Do ex. 1 and ex. 5 in writing.

25. Do ex. 10, ex. 11 and ex. 14 in writing.

26. Write from the text (ex. 17) the facts about the British way of life.

27. Write down all the good manners you know.

28. Learn to write these words:

way, seldom, hardly ever, dull, knowledge, to show off, sense, offend, to respect, respectable, fork, knife - knives, spoon, lie, either ... or, should

Listening Comprehension, 49, text "She Wanted to Show Off"

Home Reading Lesson 14, text "Rumpelstiltskin", part II
**LET US REVIEW**

1. Bob hardly ever takes care of himself. His elder brother John is giving him advice. Look at the table below and say what John is telling Bob.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You should</th>
<th>You shouldn't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be more careful.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie in the sun for 3 hours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show off your knowledge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offend your friends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak to your lawyer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respect your teachers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. What should you do to be healthy? And what shouldn't you do? Look at the pictures and say.

---

*healthy [ˈhelθi] — здоровый.*
3 Express the same idea using hardly ever.

**EXAMPLE:** Nick seldom shows off his knowledge.
Nick hardly ever shows off his knowledge.

1. Bob seldom reads dull books.
2. People seldom talk about the weather on the continent.
3. In Britain people are seldom proud of the things they know.
4. In Britain people seldom do any harm to plants and animals.
5. In Britain people seldom like to live in industrial cities.

4 Use either or neither to make the sentences complete.

**EXAMPLE:** ... be quiet or leave the library.
Either be quiet or leave the library.

1. I like ... dull books nor dull films.
2. ... you speak to my lawyer or I'll do it.
3. ... Nelly nor Tom can elect members of Parliament.
4. I can offer you ... my help or my knowledge.
5. You will ... offend them nor protect.
Jane Robinson is a primary school teacher. Look at the sentences and say what she tells (asks) her pupils.

**EXAMPLE:** Where does the sun rise? Jane asks where the sun rises.

1. Does power in Britain belong to the Queen?
2. Why is John laughing?
3. The sun sets in the west.
4. Don't do any harm to wild birds and animals!
5. Be especially careful when you cross the street!
6. We all live in the United Kingdom.
7. Why does Nelly feel lonely?
8. Can you understand these signs?
9. Does the House of Commons consist of permanent members?

We hope you do remember how to apologize in English. These are the usual ways to do it:

I'm sorry.  
I'm very sorry.  
I'm terribly sorry.  
It's my fault. It's all my fault.  
Sorry, I forgot to call you.

Sorry, I forgot to tell you.  
Sorry about yesterday.  
Excuse me.  
Excuse my being late.  
Excuse me for being late.

People usually receive apologies in these ways:

That's all right.  
That's OK.  
Never mind.  
Don't worry about it.  
It doesn't matter.

It's not your fault.  
It's not important, honestly.  
Forget it.  
No problem.

Listen to the dialogues, 50. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

1. apologize [əˈpɒlədʒaɪz] — извиниться, просить извинения
2. a fault [fɔːlt] — вина
3. worry [ˈwʌri] — беспокоиться
1) — I’m sorry about yesterday.
    — Forget it. It’s not important, honestly. And it was not your fault.
2) — Mummy, I’m sorry. The cake was so tasty that I ate it all.
    — Oh, dear! Don’t worry about it. I’ll make another.
3) — Sorry, Nick. That’s my fault.
    — Oh, no, it isn’t. Don’t worry about it! It doesn’t matter.
4) — Sorry, I forgot to phone you.
    — That’s OK. Never mind. I got the figures somewhere else.
5) — Excuse my being late. May I come in?
    — Yes, you may. Better late than never, but better never late.

8 Choose a partner and tell him/her you would like to apologize for something. Let him/her answer you. Act out the dialogues.

9 Match the pictures and the phrases:

1) He has a headache.
2) He has stomachache.
3) He has (a) toothache.
4) She is taking her brother to the dentist.
5) Mother is taking Pete to the doctor.

10 Look at the picture and name the parts of Nick’s body.

Ear, mouth, arm, body, chin, eye, face, finger, hair, head, heart, leg, foot (feet), lip, nose, shoulder, back, neck, stomach, toe.

11 Now can you guess what these words mean?

earache
backache
Reported Speech

Nelly said: “I live in Pskov.”
Nelly said that she lived in Pskov.
Nelly told me she lived in Pskov.

After said that or told smb a verb is usually in the past.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Speech</th>
<th>Reported Speech</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| am/is         | was            | She said: “Pete is reading.”
               |                | She said Pete was reading. |
| are           | were           | Tom said: “They are friends.”
               |                | Tom said they were friends. |
| have/has      | had            | I said to Dolly: “Bob has got a dog.”
               |                | I told Dolly Bob had got a dog. |
               |                | Nelly said to Tim: “I have done it.”
               |                | Nelly told Tim she had done it. |
| can           | could          | Bob said to Fred: “I can’t swim.”
               |                | Bob told Fred he couldn’t swim. |
| do/does       | did            | I said: “It doesn’t snow here.”
               |                | I said it didn’t snow here. |
| V play        | V(ed)/V3 played | Mary said to Harry: “We play basketball in the gym.”
|               | wrote          | Mary told Harry they played basketball in the gym. |
|               |                | Greg said: “I write letters very seldom.”
|               |                | Greg said he wrote letters very seldom. |
Tell your classmates what they said.

EXAMPLE: Bella: “My brother never tells lies.”
Bella said that her brother never told lies.

Bob: “We have been to London.”
Fred: “I always protect my pet.”
Mary: “I never do harm to animals.”
Mr Brown: “I am surprised at the news!”
Polly and Bill: “We go to school at 9 o’clock.”
Lucy: “I can’t skate.”

Put in said or told:

EXAMPLE: I ... Bob to come at 5.
I told Bob to come at 5.

1. Kate ... she had many pets at home.
2. Sam ... me that Robert didn’t like porridge.
3. Mother ... her son to go to the dentist.
4. My cousin ... he could ski well.
5. She ... us her knowledge of French was good.

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:
pulse [paːs], temperature [ˈtempərətʃə]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>chest</th>
<th>silly</th>
<th>medicine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blood</td>
<td>lung</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regular</td>
<td>pressure</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immediately</td>
<td>break</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>touch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

chest [chest] (n): ‘A chest’ is the upper,¹ front part of the body of a person or animals. He has a weak chest.
lung [lʌŋ] (n): a lung — lungs. ‘A lung’ is one of the two

¹ upper [ʌpər] — верхняя
organs of breathing in the chest of a person and animals. He has not got good lungs.

**cough** [kɒ]  (v): ‘To cough’ means to force air from the lungs with a sudden sound. — Why is Betty at home today? — She has a cold and coughs all the time.

**cough** (n): a cough — coughs. He has a bad cough. What a lot of people have coughs this winter! The coughs of the people in the hall made it impossible to hear the speaker.

**blood** [blʌd] (n): What is the colour of blood? When the policeman came into the room he saw some blood on the floor.

**pressure** ['preʃə] (n): blood pressure, to take one’s blood pressure. Does the nurse take his blood pressure two times a day?

**break** [brek] (v): break — broke ['braʊk] — broken ['braʊkn].

1. He fell and broke his leg. Who has broken the window? Mary dropped her doll and broke it. The cup will break if you drop it.

2. Tom will break the law if he drives too fast on this road. She never breaks a promise.

**regular** [ˈrɛɡjulə] (adj): ‘Regular’ means usual, unchanging. He has no regular work. Our regular teacher was not at school today. What is your regular dinner time?

**regularly** [ˈrɛɡjuləli] (adv): ‘Regularly’ means in a regular manner. Does he do his morning exercise regularly?

**pulse** [pʌls] (n): a weak pulse, to feel the pulse. Did the doctor feel your pulse when he came? The doctor regularly feels her pulse.

**health** [helθ] (n): There is a Ministry [ˈmɪnɪstrɪ] of Health in England. Fresh air and exercise are good for the health. Did the doctor tell Mary that she was in very bad health?

**healthy** [ˈhelθɪ] (adj): a healthy climate (place), a healthy way of living, healthy food. The young boy had a healthy appearance. Walking is a healthy exercise. A person is healthy when he is not ill.

**touch** [tɑʃ] (v): touch — touched. ‘To touch’ is to put a hand or other part of the body on or against something. Do not touch these things, please.

**immediately** [ɪˈmɪdiətli] (adv): ‘Immediately’ means at once.
Stop that immediately! If we leave immediately we can get to the cinema on time.

**temperature** ['tempərətə] (n): to take one's temperature. The nurse sent Mark home from school today with the temperature of 38 degrees. Did Mother ask him to take his temperature?

**medicine** ['medsn] (n): medicine — medicines, to take medicine, a medicine for headache. She took the cough medicine every three hours. This is a good medicine for colds. Does he take medicines regularly?

**hurt** [hɜːt] (v): hurt — hurt — hurt. He hurt his back when he fell. My shoe hurts me. She hurt his feelings when she laughed at him. Does it hurt when you move?

**pain** [peɪn] (n): to be in pain, to feel some pain, to have a pain in the chest. ‘Pain’ is a feeling of being hurt. He has a pain in his leg. The pain in Jack’s tooth became so bad that he went to the dentist.

**silly** ['sili] (adj): silly — sillier — (the) silliest. ‘Silly’ means foolish. Don’t be silly, you can’t drive home while it is snowing so heavily.

---

15 Give it a name:

— the upper, front part of the body;
— one of the two organs of breathing in the chest of a person and animals;
— to force air from the lungs with a sudden, sharp sound;
— to put a hand or other part of the body on or against something;
— at once;
— a feeling of being hurt;
— foolish.

16 Make up not less than 6 sentences (ex. 9, ex. 10, ex. 11 can help you).

**EXAMPLE:**

a) When he fell he hurt his shoulder.
b) The old woman had a pain in her neck.
c) This is a good medicine for a headache.
a) When he fell he hurt his ... .
b) The old woman had a pain in her ... .
c) This is a good medicine for a ... .

17 Say what the doctor usually does when he/she comes to visit your granny. You may use the words from the box.

**EXAMPLE:** When the doctor comes to visit my granny, he usually asks her to breathe deeply.

listens to her chest and lungs, takes her blood pressure, takes her temperature, feels her pulse, tells her to take the medicines regularly, tells her how many times a day to take her medicine

18 Make up as many true sentences as you can.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>you</th>
<th>to take this medicine for blood pressure.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>him</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>to go there immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them</td>
<td>to touch these things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>us</td>
<td>to break your promise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to break the law.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to offer such help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to delay their arrival.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19 Nowadays people want to be strong and healthy. What about you? If you want to keep fit remember the rules:

**Good Rules to Remember**

1. Get up early and go to bed early to keep fit.
2. Take regular exercises to keep fit.
3. Take a cool/cold shower to keep fit.
4. Eat healthy food to keep fit.
5. Never smoke to keep fit.
6. Clean your teeth every morning and every evening to keep fit.
7. Wash your hands before you eat to keep fit.

*to keep fit — быть в форме (быть здоровым)*
Don’t forget.
Too little food makes you thin.
Too much food makes you fat.
The wrong food makes you ill.
The right food keeps you well.
Too many sweets are bad for you especially for your teeth.

20 Read the proverb, give the Russian equivalent. Learn it by heart.
Good health is above wealth.¹

LET US READ

21 Read the dialogue to find out which of them — the doctor or the patient² was silly.

AT THE DOCTOR’S

_Doctor:_ Would you like to come in?
_Patient:_ Thank you. (He coughs.)
_Doctor:_ That cough sounds really very bad. How long have you had it?
_Patient:_ For about 2 weeks. But it’s all right.
_Doctor:_ I think I should listen to your chest and to your lungs. Take off your shirt. Breathe in deeply, that’s right... and again, please, and once more, please. Sit down. I’m going to take your blood pressure.
_Patient:_ Can I put my shirt on? It’s rather cold in here.
_Doctor:_ Oh, certainly you can. Sorry about the cold. The central heating is broken. Well, ... Do you ever take any exercise?
_Doctor:_ You should take more exercise. All right. Now I want to take your pulse. Stand up, please, and touch your toes. Do you smoke?

¹ wealth [welθ] — богатство
² patient [ˈpeɪʃənt] — пациент
Patient: Oh, yes, I do, Doctor. About ten cigarettes a day.
Doctor: You shouldn't smoke at all. You should stop immediately. Now, I want to take your temperature. OK. That's all right. Well, there you are then. Take this medicine 3 times a day after meals.
Patient: But, Doctor, I didn't come about my cough.
Doctor: You didn't?
Patient: No, it's my feet, Doctor. My feet hurt every time I walk.
Doctor: Take your shoes off! Let me see. Do they hurt now?
Patient: Oh, yes, they hurt. It hurts awfully here. I've had this pain for about 2 weeks.
Doctor: I see... And these shoes... How long have you had them?

22 Answer the questions:
1. Why did the patient come to see the doctor?
2. Why did the doctor begin to listen to the patient's chest and lungs?
3. Why was it cold in the doctor's room?
4. Was the patient a healthy man?

23 Read the text (ex. 21) with a partner.

24 Role play the dialogue. Then change over (ex. 21).
25 Say what people do it:
- they have a headache;
- they can't sleep;
- they have (a) toothache;
- they have a pain in the heart;
- they have a cold;
- they have stomachache.

to go to the dentist, to call a doctor, to go to bed, to take some medicine, to have a walk outdoors, to drink warm milk, to drink warm milk with honey or butter

26 Say what you should/shouldn't do to be healthy (ex. 19 can help you).

27 Think of a story to illustrate the proverb (ex. 20) and tell it.

---

28 This is a short summary of the dialogue (ex. 21). Write it down referring to the past.

A patient comes to see the doctor. He is coughing badly. The doctor says he doesn't like the patient's cough and asks him to take off his shirt. He wants to know how long the patient has had his cough. The doctor asks if the patient takes much exercise. The patient says that he doesn't do it regularly and explains that he hasn't come about his cough. He says his feet hurt every time he walks. He has had this pain for 2 weeks. Then he understands that he has had new shoes for 2 weeks too.

29 Do ex. 4, ex. 12, ex. 16 in writing.

30 Learn to write these words.
Let's play the 'Champion' game. Name all the parts of a body you remember. Who's finished the list? He/She is the champion.

**Example:**

P₁: A head.

P₂: ...

2. Work in pairs. P₁ should make up a compound, P₂—a sentence with it.

**Example:**

P₁: earache

P₂: I've never had earache.

stomach, tooth, head, back, ear, ache

3. Yesterday Nick did a lot of wrong things. He tries to apologize. His elder sister calms him down. Complete the dialogues.

1) **Nick:** Sorry, I forgot to buy the medicine for granny.
   
   **Sister:** ...

2) **Nick:** ...

   **Sister:** Don't worry about it. I've already done it.

3) **Nick:** Excuse my being late for lunch.

   **Sister:** ...

---

* a compound [kəmpəund] — сложное слово

* to calm down — успокоить
4) Nick: . . . . . .
   Sister: No problem. It was not your fault.

Yesterday Pete fell ill. The doctor came, examined him and talked to him. Say what the doctor told Pete.

**EXAMPLE:** “Don’t run about! Stay in bed.”
The doctor told Pete not to run about and to stay in bed.

1. You should take your temperature twice a day.
2. Are you coughing badly?
3. Breathe in deeply, through the nose.
4. Take this medicine regularly, three times a day.
5. I'd like to listen to your lungs.
6. Does it hurt to move?

5 Boris's mother asked him to do some things before going out. When she came back she saw that he had done nothing. Mother got angry. What did she tell Boris? The words below can help you.

**EXAMPLE:** You should wash up immediately.

to buy the medicine, to clean the carpet, to wash the forks, knives and spoons, to wash up, to make the bed

6 Pretend you are a doctor, choose 'a patient' among your friends, complete the dialogue and role play it.

**Patient:** Oh, Doctor . . . . . .
**Doctor:** I see. Take off your blouse. I would like to listen to your heart and lungs.
**Patient:** Yes, Doctor. And . . . . . .
**Doctor:** Have you taken your temperature?

1 examine [ˈzemɪn] — осматривать
Patient: . . . . .
Doctor: Don't worry.
Patient: What shall I take for my cold?
Doctor: . . . . .

Think of three more questions and answers to continue the conversation. Role play the whole dialogue. Don't forget to change over.

We are sure you remember the way to ask for information and to give people information when they need it, especially when you are in some place you don't know very well. These are the usual phrases:

Excuse me, can you tell me the way to ...?
How can I get to ...?
How long does it take to get to ...?
Is this ...?
Does this bus go to ...?
Is there a post office near here?
Is the museum open on Sunday?
Are the shops open on Sunday?
When do they (does it) close?

Listen to the dialogues, 52. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) — Excuse me, officer. Can you help me?
   — Yes. How may I help you?
   — Can you tell me the way to Trafalgar Square?
   — Of course. Go down this street and turn to the right. In less than ten minutes you'll see Trafalgar Square.
   — Thanks a lot.
   — Anytime.

2) — Excuse me, please. I think I'm lost. How can I get to the Houses of Parliament?
   — Walk straight along the street and on the left you'll see a building with a beautiful tower and a big clock. That's it.

I'm lost — я потерялся
— How long does it take?
— Only a few minutes.
— Thank you very much.
— You're welcome.

3) — Is there a post office near here? I'd like to buy some stamps.
— Yes, there is. It's just over there on the opposite side of the street. But I'm afraid it is closed.
— Is it open tomorrow?
— Sure.
— What time does it open?
— It opens at nine, I think.
— Thanks.
— You're welcome. Glad I was able to help.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Reported Speech (Future in the Past)

Nelly said: “I will help you.”
Nelly said she would help us.

Carol said: “We shan't arrive at 5.”
Carol said they wouldn't arrive at 5.

Phil asked Mary: “Will you go shopping?”
Phil asked Mary if she would go shopping.

Don't forget to change the following:

tomorrow → the next day
in 2 days → 2 days later
in 3 weeks → 3 weeks later
in 5 months \rightarrow 5 months later
next day \rightarrow \text{the next day, the following day}
this \rightarrow that
now \rightarrow then

Peter said: "We shall start in 2 weeks."
Peter said they would start 2 weeks later.
Ann asked: "What will you do next Friday?"
Ann asked what I should do the following Friday.
Bill asked: "Why will she come tomorrow?"
Bill asked why she would come the next day.

This is what Ada said when she met Susan. Tell your classmates what she said.

**EXAMPLE:** Ada: "I will be fourteen in January."
Ada told Susan she would be fourteen in January.

1. Ada: "We will buy the medicine later."
2. Ada: "Tim will phone us."
3. Ada: "They will spend their holiday in Spain."
4. Ada: "Bill will go shopping after lunch."
5. Ada: "Father will go to the bank."
6. Ada: "We shall go to the cinema on Monday."

Work in groups of three. Follow the example.

**EXAMPLE:** P_1: I will go to the Crimea next month.
P_2: What did P_1 say?
P_3: He said he would go to the Crimea next month.

1. The doctor will feel my pulse.
2. I am sure my little brother will break this toy car.
3. My granny will take my temperature.
4. My mother will take her blood pressure.
5. My elder sister will visit a doctor tomorrow.
LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

- weather
- advice
- information
- knowledge
- progress
- money
- news
- hair

is always in the singular

1. What wonderful weather we are having today!
2. It's good advice. Thank you for it.
3. No news is good news.
4. Is bad news better than no news?
5. Where is the money? — It is on the table.
6. What interesting and unusual information! You have to believe it!

12 Express the following in English.

1) Какая чудесная погода! 2) Новости важные. Кто принес их? 3) Советы хороши, но я не могу последовать им.
4) Сведения неверные. Постарайся получить их снова.
5) Где деньги? — Я положила их в сумку. Я думаю, они там.

13 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

match [mætʃ], phone [fəʊn], patient ['pæʃənt], to examine [ɪkˈzæmɪn] a patient, serious ['sɪərəs], seriously ['sɪərəslɪ], to run (have) a high temperature, pretty bad = very bad

1 hair в значении волосы всегда употребляется в единственном числе, однако возможно более редкое употребление hairs в значении волоски
b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

- excite
- prescribe
- nod
- tongue
- sneeze
- throat
- recover
- swallow
- worry
- fall
- fall ill

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

**excite** [ɪkˈsait] (v): excite — excited. ‘To excite’ means to make smth feel happy or enthusiastic about smth pleasant or good. The story excited the little boy very much. Don’t excite yourself!

**to be (get) excited about (by) smth**: The patient is very ill and must not be excited. There is nothing to get excited about. Everybody was excited by the news of the victory.

**throat** [θrɔut] (n): ‘The throat’ is the front of the neck. When you have a cold your throat is often red. To have a sore [sɔː] throat. Nick is ill. He has a sore throat. I often have a sore throat in autumn.

**fall** [fɔːl] (v): fall — fell — fallen. The book fell from the table to the floor. He fell out of the window. The leaves fall in autumn.

**to fall ill**: He has fallen ill.

**nod** [nɒd] (v): nod — nodded. ‘To nod’ means to bow the head quickly as a sign of agreement or as a greeting. I asked him if he could come and he nodded. He nodded to me as he passed. He nodded to show that he understood. The president nodded and everyone sat down around the table. He nodded as if to say “yes”.

**examine** [ɪkˈzæmɪn] (v): examine — examined, to examine a patient, to examine a child, to examine a new theory [ˈθɪəri], plan. The doctor examined the child to see if she was ill.

**swallow** [ˈswɔːləʊ] (v): swallow — swallowed. ‘To swallow’ is to move food or drink down the throat from the mouth into the stomach. The child had a sore throat and it was difficult for him to swallow.

**tongue** [tʌŋ] (n): a tongue — tongues. ‘The tongue’ is a movable organ in the mouth, used for tasting and swal-
lowing or speaking. People use their tongues to speak. An animal’s tongue is cooked and used as food. Mother tongue. My mother tongue is Russian, His mother tongue is English.

worry ['wɔri] (v): worry — worried. ‘To worry’ means to give a person (oneself) no peace of mind. What is worrying you? — I have a bad tooth that is worrying me. She worries about little things. Her parents worry when she is out too late. The arithmetic problem worried her.

sneeze [snɪz] (v): sneeze — sneezed. He has caught a cold and now he is sneezing very often. Whenever Tom has a cold he always coughs and sneezes.

serious ['sərɪəs] (adj): serious — more serious — the most serious, a serious face, a serious problem. After a few jokes his speech became serious.

seriously ['sərɪəslɪ] (adv): ‘Seriously’ means in a serious manner. He is seriously ill.

recover [rɪ'kʌvə] (v): recover — recovered. He has recovered from his bad cold and can go out tomorrow. She recovered slowly after her long illness.

prescribe [prɪ'skriːb] (v): prescribe — prescribed, to prescribe a medicine for ... (smb/smth). The doctor prescribed a new medicine for the pain in my chest. The doctor prescribed some medicine for John and he soon recovered.

Give it a name:

— the front of the neck;
— to bow the head quickly as a sign of agreement or as a greeting;
— to look at smth closely and carefully in order to find out something;
— to move food or drink down the throat from the mouth into the stomach;
— an organ in the mouth used for tasting, swallowing or speaking;
— to give a person (oneself) no peace of mind.

illness [ɪ'lɪns] — болезнь
15 Make up not less than 6 sentences, completing the following:
Everybody was excited by ....

**EXAMPLE:** Everybody was excited by their arrival.

16 Work in pairs. $P_1$ names a part of the body. $P_2$ uses this word in the sentence The doctor prescribed a new medicine for the pain in my .... Don't forget to change over.

**EXAMPLE:**
$P_1$: chest
$P_2$: The doctor prescribed a new medicine for the pain in my chest.

17 You came to see your friend after the doctor's visit. Ask him/her questions about this visit.

**EXAMPLE:** Did the doctor examine your body?

18 Say it right: How many true sentences can you make?

I asked him to help me
to prescribe the medicine
to examine the child
to swallow a spoonful of the medicine
to show me his tongue

and he nodded as if to say "yes".

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

$V$ + *-able* = *Adj*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V</th>
<th>-able</th>
<th>Adj</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>-able</td>
<td>imaginable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respect</td>
<td>-able</td>
<td>respectable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>-able</td>
<td>readable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>-able</td>
<td>breakable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>-able</td>
<td>movable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Look at the table above and fill in the necessary words.

**Example:** The ... of the snow is fantastic!
The whiteness of the snow is fantastic!

1. She is very ill but the doctor doesn’t know what ... it is.
2. Though the cup is made of thin glass it is not ....
3. The Queen thought of all names ... to guess the name of Rumpelstiltskin.
4. Everybody respects this gentleman. He is very ... .
5. I can’t read the book. I don’t think it is ... .
6. Strong people don’t like ...
7. We were surprised at your formal ...

**Let Us Read and Learn**

Listen to the poem “Your Cold Is Getting Worse”, 53, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

**Your Cold Is Getting Worse**

(by Caroline Graham)

Your cold is getting worse,
You ought to see the nurse.

Oh, no, I’m fine.  
My cold is much better.

*Ought to = should*
Your cough is getting worse,
You ought to see the nurse.

Oh, no, I'm fine.
My cough is much better.

Your cough sounds bad.
It doesn't sound good.
You ought to see the nurse.
You really should.

Read the proverb, give the Russian equivalent. Learn it by heart.

Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy
and wise.¹

---

Let Us Read

Read the text and say what Ronald's imaginary illnesses are and when he
usually has them.

RONALD IS REALLY ILL

Last Thursday morning Ronald Bell took part in the football match. The game was really exciting and Ronald's team² won. The weather that day wasn't fine at all. It was rather cold, there were dark clouds in the sky and it even started to rain several times.

When Ronald came home he felt that something was wrong with him. He had a terrible headache, a sore throat and he had a bad pain in his legs. He felt so bad that he decided to go to bed without his dinner. His mother understood that Ronald was ill and phoned Doctor Green. "Doctor, I think Ronald has fallen ill. Could you come?"

Doctor Green visited the Bells the next morning. She was a nice woman of about 35. She came into Ronald's room and asked him how he felt. Then she took the boy's pulse, listened to his heart and lungs: "You feel pretty bad, don't you?" she asked.

¹ wise [waiz] — мудрый
² team [tim] — команда
“Terrible,” Ronald nodded. He said that sometimes when they had had a test at school he could pretend to be ill, just because he didn’t want to go to school. But it was not his “trick” illness this time. The doctor examined the boy’s throat and tongue. Ronald said that he had stomachache and a pain in the right side.¹

Doctor Green took the boy’s temperature. It was rather high. His throat was red and it was difficult for him to swallow and to breathe. Ronald’s mother asked if it was flu or tonsillitis.² But Doctor Green told her not to worry. She said it was neither flu nor tonsillitis. It was just a bad cold.

“Ronald is running a high temperature. He is sneezing and coughing now, but I’m sure, he will be much better in a few days. It is not serious. I am going to prescribe some medicine for his headache and his sore throat. Please, Mrs Bell, go and get the medicine. And you, Ronald, should stay in bed for 3 days at least.³ Drink warm milk with honey or mineral water. Then you will recover soon. Cheer up! I’ll send a specialist to have a look at your right side. Bye!” With these words she left the room.

¹ side — сч., бок
² tonsillitis [ˈtɒnsəlɪtɪs] — ангины
³ at least [ətˈlist] — по крайней мере
23 Find and read aloud the sentences to describe:

- the weather;
- Ronald's illness;
- what the doctor did when she came;
- what the doctor asked Ronald to do.

24 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer.

25 Put the points in a logical order according to the text.

1. The doctor's advice.
2. The mother's call to the doctor.
3. The weather on the football match day.
4. The doctor's visit.
5. Ronald's health at the end of the day.

LET US TALK

26 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 22.) Use ex. 25 as a plan.

27 We hope you understand the proverb (ex. 21). Then think of a story to illustrate it and tell the story to your classmates.

28 Choose a partner and talk to him/her about the doctor's last visit when you were ill.

LET US WRITE

29 Make a list of all the parts of the body you remember.

30 Do ex. 4, ex. 11, ex. 12 in writing.

31 Form the words according to the example. (See "Look, Read and Remember!", p. 211-212.) Check the spelling of the new words in the dictionary.
to excite, to be/get excited about/by smth, throat, to fall (fell, fallen), to fall ill, to nod, to examine, to swallow, tongue, to worry, to sneeze, serious, seriously, to recover, to prescribe

Listening Comprehension, 54, text "The Doctor's Advice"
Home Reading Lesson 16, text "The Old Woman and the Doctor"

**LESSON 17**

**LET US REVIEW**

   Excite, seriously, throat, immediately, cough, sneeze, recover, serious, blood, pain, silly, worry, tongue, swallow, hurt, nod, fall, examine, regularly, lung, chest, carefully, seldom

2. Complete the sentences.
   1. ... excited the little girl very much.
   2. ... he always coughs and sneezes.
   3. The doctor prescribed a medicine for ... .
   4. ... is seriously ill.
5. She worries about .... 
6. People use their tongue to ....

3
Agree or disagree.
1. When you have a sore throat you can go for a walk.
2. You should always stay in bed when you cough.
3. You will recover quicker if you stay in bed.
4. If the doctor prescribes a medicine for you, you shouldn’t take it regularly.
5. A person is healthy when he is free from illness.
6. You should eat the right food to keep fit.

4
Bob was ill. Mother tried to encourage1 him. Say what Mother told Bob.

**EXAMPLE:** You will stay in bed till tomorrow.
Mother said he would stay in bed till the next day.

Mother: — You will stay in bed till tomorrow.
   — We shall go to the doctor in 3 days.
   — The doctor will feel your pulse.
   — The doctor will listen to your heart.
   — I shall take your temperature.
   — Don’t worry. You will recover soon.

5
Peter is a boy from the USA. He is in the centre of Moscow. He is near the monument to Y. Dolgoruky. He is lost. Pretend you are Peter and ask the way to:

a) the nearest post office,
b) Red Square,
c) the Bolshoi Theatre.

Let your classmates tell you the way.

6
Make up: a) adjectives from the following verbs: respect, move, drink, break;
b) nouns from adjectives: ill, white, polite, kind.

**EXAMPLE:** a) laugh — laughable
   b) serious — seriousness

1 to encourage [inˈkʌrɪdʒ] — подбодрить
Do you remember some phrases people use when they talk at the shops? If not, look at the list below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How much does it cost?</th>
<th>What can I do for you?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How much is it?</td>
<td>Why don't you buy it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'd like to have a look at .....</td>
<td>Can I help you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you show me ...?</td>
<td>What size are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me, I'd like .....</td>
<td>What would you like to see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you change ...?</td>
<td>What would you like to buy?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Listen to the dialogues, 55. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

**AT THE CHEMIST'S**

1) — Good afternoon.  
— Good afternoon. Can I help you?  
— Yes, I've got a terrible headache.  
— How long have you had it?  
— Only about two or three hours.  
— Try this medicine.  
— How much does it cost?  
— Three pounds, please.  
— Here you are. Thank you.  
— Thank you.

2) — Good morning.  
— Good morning. What can I do for you?  
— I'd like a toothbrush and a tube of toothpaste.  
— Is that all, madam?  
— Yes, that's all, thank you.

Fill in a, the or '...' to complete the sentences.

— What fine weather we are having today!  
— Information is very important.  
— Where is money?

---
1 cost [kost] (cost; cost) — стоять
2 at the chemist's ['kemists] — в аптеке
3 a toothbrush ['tʌθbɹə] — зубная щетка
4 a toothpaste ['tʌθpeɪst] — зубная паста
— Do you think ... money is important in our life?
— What ... weather do you like ... cold weather or ... hot weather?
— What ... important news!
— ... advice is good.

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

**Reported Speech**

Nelly said: “I have bought a good book.”
Nelly said: “I bought a good book.”
Nelly said she had bought a good book.

present perfect  |  past perfect (in the reported speech)
past indefinite  |  present perfect

Ann said to Helen:  "Pete broke the glass."
Ann told Helen Pete had broken the glass.

Fred asked Jill:  "Did you hear the news?"
"Have you heard the news?"
Fred asked Jill if she had heard the news.

Frank asked Tom:  "Where did Jack go?"
"Where has Jack gone?"
Frank asked Tom where Jack had gone.

Don’t forget the following changes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>here</th>
<th>there</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>then</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>that</td>
<td>these</td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td>that day</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>the day before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ago</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>last</td>
<td>the previous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*previous* [ˈprɪvɪəs] — предыдущий
Frank said: "It's hot here."
Frank said it was hot there.

Mary asked: "Where do you live now?"
Mary asked (me) where I lived then.

David asked: "Have you seen this film?"
David asked (me) if I had seen that film.

Jane asked: "Have you bought these flowers?"
Jane asked (me) if I had bought those flowers.

John asked: "What are you doing today?"
John asked (us) what we were doing that day.

Betty asked: "Where was Nora yesterday?"
Betty asked where Nora had been the day before.

Kate asked: "Who broke the cup 3 days ago?"
Kate asked who had broken the cup 3 days before.

Sara asked: "Why didn't you go to school last Friday?"
Sara asked (me) why I hadn't gone to school the previous Friday.

Work in groups of three. Follow the example.

**EXAMPLE:**

P₁: I wrote to my parents yesterday.
P₂: What did P₁ say?
P₃: He said he had written to his parents the day before.

1. I wrote to my parents yesterday.
2. Jack is coughing badly.
3. The doctor examined the patient two days ago.
4. Val is seriously ill now.
5. You will recover soon.
6. Show me your tongue, please.
7. Where did you go last night?
8. Have you done it today?
ill/sick¹

Nick is ill.
Nick is a sick boy.

the sick boy the boy is ill/sick
the sick girl the girl is ill/sick
the sick children the children are ill/sick
the sick pupils the pupils are ill/sick

to be ill = to be sick (Am. E.)

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

a diet [ˈdaɪət]
to keep to a diet
to be on a diet
to keep to a diet of salad and fruit

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

to suffer from: He suffers from headaches. She has suffered from a sore throat all week. She suffered from a broken leg.

diet [ˈdaɪət] (n): ‘Diet’ is what one usually eats and drinks. The Japanese diet of fish, rice² and vegetables. Proper

¹ sick [sɪk] — больной
² rice [raɪs] — рис
diet and exercise are both important for health. The doctor ordered him a diet without sugar.

to be on a diet: No cake for me, thank you! I’m on a diet. 
to keep to a diet: The doctor told me to keep to a diet.


cream [kri:m] (n): Cream is at the top of the milk. Butter is made from cream. Do you like cream? Would you like your coffee with cream?

soft [soft] (adj): soft — softer — (the) softest. ‘Soft’ is not hard. Soft ground, soft voice, soft water, a soft drink. She has a soft voice. He likes only soft drinks.

cottage cheese [kʌtɪdʒ ˈʃɛs] (n): ‘Cottage cheese’ is a soft white cheese. Russian people often eat cottage cheese for breakfast.


bitter ['bɪtə] (adj): 1. ‘Bitter’ means having a bad taste. The strong coffee tasted bitter. The boy did not like the bitter medicine for his cough.

2. Bitter cold, bitter enemy. Put on your sweater. It’s bitter cold. Paul is my bitter enemy.

definite ['dɛfɪnɪt] (adj): I want a definite answer “yes” or “no”. It is definite that Mary is going to school next autumn. The definite article, the indefinite article.

definitely ['dɛfɪnɪtlɪ] (adv): Definitely — in a definite way. He is definitely going to speak. That answer is definitely true. — Are you going with us? — Definitely.

ride [raid] (v): ride — rode — ridden. ‘To ride’ means to sit on a horse or other animal and be carried along by it. He jumped on his horse and rode away. The youngest child rode on its father’s back. We rode across the fields.

bicycle ['baɪsɪkl] (n): a bicycle — bicycles, a bicycle — bike, to ride a bicycle, to get on a bicycle, to get off a bicycle. Can you ride a bicycle? He got on his bike and rode slowly down the road.

my (his) cup of tea: I don’t want to ride a horse, it’s not my cup of tea.
12 Give it a name:
— to feel pain;
— to be cooked in hot oil or butter;
— having a bad taste;
— clear and certain;
— in a definite way;
— to sit on a horse or other animal and be carried along by it;
— not hard.

13 Answer the questions.
1. What dairy products do you know?
2. Who suffers from headaches in your family?
3. Who is on a diet without sugar? (meat? bread?)
4. Which of your family keeps to a diet of salad and fruit?
5. What is made from cream?
6. What is made from milk?
7. Which of you likes fried eggs?
8. When do you usually fry fish?
9. Strong coffee tastes bitter, doesn’t it?
10. Who is definitely going to speak?
11. Where can you ride a bicycle?
12. You like soft drinks, don’t you?

14 Disagree.

**EXAMPLE:**  — You get a sore throat when you keep to a diet of fruit.
— I’m afraid you are not right. You don’t get a sore throat when you keep to a diet of fruit.

1. When you suffer from a headache you have a pain in the stomach.
2. When you suffer from tonsillitis you have a pain in your leg.
3. If you are on a diet you usually eat a lot of fried food.

oil [oil] — подсолнечное масло
4. Your mother lets you eat ice cream when you have a sore throat.
5. You never stay in bed, when you are seriously ill.

Look at the pictures and say where Nick rides his bicycle.

Say it right. How many true sentences can you write?

**EXAMPLE:** Swimming is not her cup of tea.

Swimming  | her
Riding a bike  | my
Playing the piano  | his
Writing poems  | your
Shopping  |
Reading detective stories  | cup of tea.
17 Listen to the poem "Mama Knows Best", p. 56, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

MAMA KNOWS BEST
(by Caroline Graham)
You shouldn’t do it that way.
You ought to do it this way.
You ought to do it this way.
You ought to do it my way.

You shouldn’t wear it that way.
You ought to wear it this way.
You ought to wear it this way.
You ought to wear it my way.

You shouldn’t go with them.
You ought to go with us.
You shouldn’t take the train.
You ought to take the bus.

You shouldn’t wear that hat.
You ought to cut your hair.
You shouldn’t get so fat.
You ought to eat a pear.

You shouldn’t do it that way.
You ought to do it this way.
You ought to do it this way.
You ought to do it my way.

18 Some people live long lives and feel really well, some people suffer from all illnesses imaginable. What helps a person to keep fit, to remain healthy? You know some rules already. Now read the dialogue and draw out some more rules about what people should/shouldn’t do to keep fit.
WHAT WE SHOULD DO TO KEEP FIT

David: Hi, Steve. You look fantastic! I haven't seen you for a long time and you haven't changed a bit. You really look healthy.

Steve: I guess I do. I hardly ever get a cold, maybe once in 2 or 3 years and that's all. I never suffer from anything.

David: No headaches, backaches, pains in the stomach?

Steve (laughs): No, and my legs don't hurt and my arms don't hurt either.

David: Do you think that's because of your diet or the exercise you take?

Steve: Oh, I don't know. I mean I like food, and I think I eat healthy food — fruit, vegetables, lots of salad. But I also enjoy fried food, meat, fish. And I like dairy products — milk, cream, sour cream, cottage cheese. I eat bread and I am fond of pancakes with caviar though I don't like sweets. In fact I like neither bitter nor sweet things. So, as you see, I can't say I keep to a diet.

David: No, definitely not. Do you take regular exercise?

Steve: Not enough I think. My work keeps me busy. In summer I play volleyball, swim and ride a bicycle. Last summer I tried to ride a horse but quickly understood that wasn't my cup of tea.

David: Do you go in for any winter sports?

Steve: Not really. I mean I walk a lot. But no jogging or playing indoor games. So that's the exercise I do. By the way I don't smoke and never drink alcohol, only soft drinks.
1. a) Steve hasn’t changed a bit.
   b) Steve has changed a lot.
2. a) Steve never suffers from anything.
   b) Steve suffers from all illnesses imaginable.
3. a) Steve’s legs hurt a lot.
   b) Steve’s legs hardly ever hurt.
4. a) Steve takes a lot of exercise.
   b) Steve doesn’t go in for sports regularly.
5. a) Steve keeps to a diet.
   b) Steve doesn’t keep to a diet.
6. a) Steve drives a car.
   b) Steve rides a bike.

**LET US TALK**

21 Pretend you are a doctor. Let the classmates answer your questions about their health.

22 Retell the text (ex. 18) in your own words. Refer your retelling to the past.

23 Say what you should eat for good health.

24 Say what exercise you should take to keep fit.

**LET US WRITE**

25 You are sure to know some words for food and drink. Copy the table and fill it in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food</th>
<th>Drinks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>Hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>Hot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26 Write not less than 10 good rules to keep fit.

27 Do ex. 4, ex. 9 in writing.

28 Remember the last time you were ill. Describe it. (Write not less than 10 sentences.)

29 Learn to write these words.

*to suffer (from), diet, to be on a diet, to keep to a diet, to fry, cream, soft, soft drink, cottage cheese, dairy products, bitter, definite, definitely, to ride (rode, ridden), bicycle (bike), (not) my (his) cup of tea*

Listening Comprehension, p 57, text “An Ill Turn”

Home Reading Lesson 17, text “George Mikes and His Book”

LESSON 18

Let Us Talk

1 Imagine that you are a teacher of geography. Use the map of Great Britain (see p. 161) and tell your imagined pupils all you can about Britain. (Lesson 12, ex. 16, ex. 18, ex. 19 can help you.)

2 Say all you can about the power of state in Great Britain, the Queen and Parliament. (Lesson 13, ex. 21, ex. 22 can help you.)

3 Say in what way the British differ from the people living on the continent. (Lesson 14, ex. 17, ex. 18 can help you.)

4 We are sure you have a younger brother/sister or a friend. But we are not sure they have good table manners. Can you teach them? (Lesson 14, ex. 17, ex. 19 can help you.)
5 Say what people should do to keep fit. (Lesson 15, ex. 19, ex. 21, Lesson 17, ex. 14, ex. 19 can help you.)

6 Work in pairs. Choose a partner and ask him/her questions about:
   — his/her health;
   — his/her last illness;
   — his/her last visit to the doctor.

   Don't forget to change over. (Lesson 16, ex. 21 and Lesson 17, ex. 8, ex. 18 can help you.)

7 Read the following text and say why Mr Martin often went to see his doctor.

**MR MARTIN**

Mr Martin had never married. He lived alone in a small house in a village situated in the south of Wales. Mr Martin never felt lonely. He was very much interested in many different things. He tried to get as much information as possible about the United Kingdom, the Royal Family and its history.

He wanted to know what the government was doing about the lives of poor people in big industrial cities. Mr Martin studied law seriously and often had long talks about the problems of power in the country with his neighbour, a former lawyer. He had very interesting plans to offer, plans how to make the work of Parliament better. But he was especially interested in the problems of health.

Mr Martin had a lot of knowledge about health and medicine. He led a regular life and was always very careful about what he ate and drank. He hardly ever went out when the weather was cold because he was always afraid that he would fall ill. He was afraid of getting some terrible illness.

So he often went to see his doctor whom he respected very much and whom he definitely believed. But the doctor was getting very tired of Mr Martin's regular visits and his imagined illnesses. In fact Mr Martin was a healthy man, he seldom

*neighbour [ˈneɪbə] — сосед*
caught a cold, he never had a headache, earache or pains in the stomach. But he thought he had all the illnesses imaginable.

One day Mr Martin hurried into the doctor's office and told him he was sure he had some terrible illness which he had read about in the newspaper. He showed the doctor the paper. The doctor read it carefully and then said: "I'm surprised, Mr Martin, that you think you have this illness. There are no signs that you have it. As it is written here, people don't know when they have this illness. There are no symptoms ['sɪmptəmz] and people usually feel very well. They don't cough or sneeze, they have no pains in the head or in any other part of the body, their pulse is normal ['nɔːml], so is their blood pressure. It doesn't hurt them to move, to breathe or to swallow. So, please, don't be silly. You shouldn't worry."

Mr Martin was offended. "But that's just how I feel, doctor. I don't suffer from all these things either."

8 Find and read out the sentences to describe the pictures.
9 Find and read out from the text all the words and word combinations referring to the topic "Health".
10 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer them.
11 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 7.)
1. Express the same ideas using *ought to*.

**EXAMPLE:**
You should examine these pictures carefully.
You ought to examine these pictures carefully.

1. You should keep to a fruit diet.
2. You should eat more dairy products.
3. You should definitely visit your granny every week.
4. You should take some cream, cottage cheese and butter to your grandparents.
5. You should take your little sister to the eye specialist.
6. You should clean the flat with the vacuum cleaner.

2. Say what the children told their mother yesterday.

**EXAMPLE:**
*Fanny:* Jack was excited.
Fanny told her mother Jack had been excited.

*Jim:* Nelly has already recovered.
*Bill:* Caroline nodded to me when I saw her.
*Jack:* The picture fell from the wall 3 days ago.
*Ann:* The doctor examined my throat.
*Fred:* It hurt me to swallow.
*Tom:* We have bought the medicine.
*John:* We felt excited.
*Sue:* Join us!
Say what the children asked their teacher last week.

**Example:** Carol: Where does the sun rise? Carol asked the teacher where the sun rose.

Kate: When will we go to see the Houses of Parliament?
Boris: Did Jack play the violin at school?
Andrew: Who does the book belong to?
Steve: Where is Nick’s bicycle?
George: Who protected the little girl?
Pam: What separates England from the continent?

4 Fill in the table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>my</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Choose the right word.

1. Look! I’ve bought the books. Shall I give (their, them) to you?
2. Pete, I’m talking to (you, your). Where are (you, your) keys?
3. Ann’s little cousin is playing the piano. She can play (it, its) well.
4. Do you see the boy near the blackboard? Do you know (him, his)? — I do. But I don’t remember (him, his) name.
5. I’m not sure it is (their, them) problem.
6. This is my dog Rex. (It, Its) tail is black-and-white.
Use the right pronoun to complete the sentences.

1. I don’t know these men. Do you know ... ?
2. Where is Tom? I want to speak to ... .
3. We live in Wales. ... parents live with ... .
4. Ann, have you done ... homework? Have ... finished ... yet?
5. I have bought nice fresh bread. Will you take ... out of the bag?
6. They are in the garden. But where are ... children?

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

I — my — mine
he — his — his
she — her — hers
it — its — its
we — our — ours
you — your — yours
they — their — theirs

— Whose book is this?
— It’s my book.
— Are you sure it is yours?
— Yes, I am. It’s mine.

— Whose bicycles are they?
— They are our bikes. They are ours.

Complete the sentences.

EXAMPLE: It’s my washing machine. It is mine.

1. It is our village. It is ... .
2. They are his puppies. They are ... .
3. It is her violin. It is ... .
4. They are our chrysanthemums. They are ... .
5. It is your guitar. It is ... .
6. They are their sculptures. They are ... .

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Indefinite</th>
<th>Present Indefinite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He will go to bed</td>
<td>when he comes home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will read to you</td>
<td>when you are in bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She will call me</td>
<td>if she arrives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We shall buy a new sofa</td>
<td>if we get the money.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

She will go to the doctor if she doesn't get better.  
We shall be surprised if he doesn't protect her.  
They will go to the stadium if it doesn't rain.  
I will play the guitar if he is not in.

8 Begin or complete the sentences.

a) 1. If it doesn't snow, . . . . . .
   2. When they finish their job, . . . . . .
   3. When we learn the poem, . . . . . .
   4. If we go to the cinema, . . . . . .
   5. If the weather is fine, . . . . . .

b) 1. . . . . . . I will go shopping.
   2. . . . . . . she will book a ticket.
   3. . . . . . . they will eat pancakes with caviar.
   4. . . . . . . he will explore the new land.
   5. . . . . . . they will continue their work.

9 Say what they will do when the lesson is over.

**EXAMPLE:** When the lesson is over, Nick will go to the cinema.
10 Say what you will do if it doesn’t rain.

**EXAMPLE:** I will go swimming if it doesn’t rain.

11 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

- cricket [ˈkrɪkɪt]
- golf [ɡʊlf]
- club [klʌb]
- rugby [ˈrʌgbi]
- college [ˈkɒlɪdʒ]
- match [mætʃ]
- athletics [æθˈletɪks]
- horse-riding [ˈhɔːsrʌɪdɪŋ]
- climbing [ˈklæmɪŋ]
- university [juːnɪˈvɜːsɪti]
- international [ˌɪntəˈnæʃənl]
- championship [ˈʃæmpɪənʃɪp]

b) Look up the words in your vocabulary:

- boat
- boating
- invent
- probably
- team
- exist
- lawn
- widely
- row
- rowing
- develop
- spread
- compete
- competition
- hold
c) Read the phrases and sentences to know how to use the words.

**boat** [bəut] (n): a boat — boats, to go in a boat. Every summer they travel along the Thames in a boat.

**boating:** My cousins are fond of boating. Boating is a popular sport in Britain.

**to go boating:** It is so pleasant to go boating early in the morning.

**row** [rɔu] (v): row — rowed. ‘To row’ means to move through the water in a boat with oars.¹ We rowed across the lake. Can you row a boat?

**rowing:** to go in for rowing. Rowing is popular in many European countries. My elder brother is a sportsman. He goes in for rowing.

**invent** [ɪn'vent] (v): invent — invented. ‘To invent’ means to make or think of something for the first time. — Who invented the telephone? — Alexander Bell did. He invented the telephone in 1876. Radio was invented by A. Popov in 1895.

**develop** [dɪ'velp] (v): develop — developed, to develop a business. The government should develop new industries. I’d like to develop this idea.

**probably** [ˈprɒbəbli] (adv): You will probably win the game. John probably told his father all about it, but I’m not sure. We’ll probably go on a trip this summer.

**spread** [spred] (v): spread — spread — spread. 1. The news of the discovery spread quickly. If I tell you this secret, don’t spread it. The fire soon spread through the whole village. 2. Spread jam on your bread.

**widespread:** a widespread illness, a widespread sport.

**team** [tiːm] (n): a team — teams. A ‘team’ is a group of people acting together in a game. A football team, a basketball team, a volleyball team, a hockey team. John is in the school cricket team.

**compete** [kəmpət] (v): compete — competed. ‘To compete’ means to try to win. The two girls competed for the first prize.

**competition** [kəmpəˈtɪʃn] (n): a competition — competitions, an important competition.

¹ oars [ɔːz] — вёсла
to be in competition with: He was in competition with 10 others. Our team was in competition with three others for the championship. George is going to take part in the swimming competition.

exist [ɪɡˈzɪst] (v): exist — existed. 'To exist' means to live or to be real. Many people believe that God exists. We cannot exist without air, food and warmth. Man cannot exist for long without water.

lawn [laʊn] (n): a lawn — lawns, a green lawn. A lawn is an area ['eəriə] of land covered with grass around the house. A lawn in front of the house. Lawn tennis is played on a lawn.

hold [həʊld] (v): hold — held — held. 'To hold' means to keep or to take in the hands or arms. If you hold my bag I will unlock the door. The girl was holding her father's hand. Hold your head up!

to hold a competition in smth: When did they hold a competition in boxing?

12 Read out the names of sports and games.

Competition, athletics, boating, climbing, mountain, probably, horse-riding, golf, ball, skating, rugby, row, team, volleyball, lawn tennis, cricket, basketball, skiing, hockey, develop, football, boat, compete, lawn, rowing.

13 Say it right. Make up as many true sentences as you can.

a) Radio  Football  The telephone  Fast food  was invented  by A. Bell.  in America.

b) Cricket  Boxing  Rugby  Hockey  Golf  Football  Skiing  is spread  all over the world.

in Britain.  in Russia.  in England.
14 Say what game you will probably play next Monday.

**EXAMPLE:** I will probably play chess next Monday.

15 Name 5 or 6 widespread sports and games in Russia.

16 Use the following word combinations in the sentences of your own.

**EXAMPLE:** to develop one’s body

A lot of exercises develop our bodies.

to develop a plan, to develop one’s business, to develop one’s ideas, to develop one’s imagination, to develop a new industry

17 Fill in the words *boat* (boating), *row* (rowing), *team*, *college*, *international*, *competition*, *lawn*.

1. ... and ... are popular sports in Britain.
2. Our football ... took part in the ... ... last year.
3. There is a green ... in front of our cottage.
4. Where do you keep your fishing ...?
5. He goes in for sports and takes part in all ... competitions.
6. Can you ...?
7. Are you a member of your ... cricket team?

**LET US READ AND LEARN**

18 Listen to the poem "Selfish", page 58. Then read and learn it by heart.

**SELFISH**

(*after Caroline Graham*)

This is mine!
That’s yours!
Don’t touch mine!
Get your own.

selfish [selfi] — adj. selfish
This is mine.
  That's yours.
  That's yours.
Hey, what are you doing?
  What are you doing with that?
  That's mine!
Hey, what are you doing?
  What are you doing with that?
  That's his!
Hey, what are you doing?
  What are you doing with that?
  That's hers!
What's mine is mine.
  What's yours is yours.
What's his is his.
  What's hers is hers.
What's ours is ours.
  What's theirs is theirs.

LET US READ

19 Read the text and answer the question at its end.

POPULAR BRITISH SPORTS AND GAMES

The British people like everyone else like sports and games. But if they are asked to name their favourite sport they will probably name football, cricket and tennis, though many of them go in for such sports as golf and hockey, athletics and climbing, horse-riding and boating, rugby and rowing.

Britain invented and developed many of the sports and games which are now played all over the world. Football is one of them. Probably the most popular sport nowadays was first developed in England. It is spread all over the country — in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. Their national teams compete with each other every year. They take part in different competitions. The two best teams play in the Cup Final at Wembley Stadium in London. It is one of the most important
football matches of the year. National teams of England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland take part in European competitions and other international matches. There are many football clubs all over Britain.

Cricket is another popular summer sport. It is sometimes called the English national game. It is known that people played cricket in England as early as 1550. Many cricket clubs were founded in the 18th century. Nowadays this summer game, which is typically British, is played in schools, colleges and universities and in most towns and villages of Britain. Teams play weekly games from late April to the end of September. Cricket is a very long game, and quite dangerous. It is a slow game too. International cricket matches can last for 5 days. Cricket is not played only by men. Girls and women play this game too.

Boxing as a British sport is one of the oldest. It existed even in Saxon times. Golf was developed in Scotland and now is widely spread all over Britain. Tennis, or lawn tennis, is another popular game in Britain. It was first played in England in 1872 and the first championship at Wimbledon was in 1877. Nowadays every summer in June, the British hold their famous International Tennis Championship at Wimbledon, in west London.

Swimming, boating and sailing have always been popular in Britain and are enjoyed by thousands of people. But the British are less interested in skiing and skating, typically Russian types of sport. Can you explain why?

20 Read out the sentences to describe the pictures.
Let Us Talk

21 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer.

22 Speak about: a) popular British sports and games; b) sports and games popular in Russia.

Let Us Write

23 Express the following in English:

1) Если я буду чувствовать себя плохо, я пойду к врачу. 2) Когда мои родители вернутся, мы пойдем смотреть соревнования по гребле. 3) Если не будет дождя, мы будем играть в теннис на лужайке перед домом. 4) Если Ник будет дома в 6, мы посмотрим футбольный матч по телевизору вместе. 5) Когда папа придет домой, мы пообедаем и поедем на стадион. 6) Если наша команда будет много тренироваться, мы выиграем эти соревнования.

24 Use the right form of the pronoun to complete the sentences.

1) This is (my, mine) team. 2) The picture is (my, mine). 3) Is (her, hers) boat big or small? 4) (Our, Ours) skates are better than (your, yours). 5) She is an old friend of (my, mine). 6) Where are (their, theirs) children? 7) Is he a friend of (your, yours)?
25. Do ex. 1, ex. 2, ex. 3 and ex. 9 in writing.

26. Refer the words of ex. 27 to the right column.

Nouns  Verbs  Adverbs  Adjectives  Pronouns

27. Learn to write these words:

- cricket, golf, athletics, horse-riding, climbing, club, college, university, international, rugby, boat, boating, to go boating, to row, rowing, to invent, to develop, probably, to spread (spread, spread), team, to compete, competition, to exist, lawn, to hold (held, held), mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Listening Comprehension, 59, text “You’ve Won”

Home Reading Lesson 18, text “From the History of Sport”

LESSON 20

LET US REVIEW

1. Look through the words and then read out the words in alphabetical order: beginning first with ‘a’, then with ‘b’, ‘c’, ‘d’, etc.

   Boat, among, row, invite, develop, probably, rowing, spread, team, compete, exist, lawn, hold, cricket, competition, golf, club, rugby, college, boating, arrival, match, athletics, horse-riding, climbing, university, international, championship.

2. Name all sports and games you know.

3. Express the same ideas in another way.

   EXAMPLE: This is my old boat.
              This old boat is mine.
1. This is my book.
2. That is her bike.
3. Is this your money?
4. That is our dog, it is not their dog.
5. This is their house.
6. We've got two cars. Our car is white. Their car is red.

Look at the pictures and say whose things they are.

**EXAMPLE:**  The spoons, fork and knives are Betty's.

Say it right. How many true sentences can you make up?

My uncles
My elder brother
My friends
My little sister
That boy
The girl

is  are  fond of
boating.
rowing.
cricket.
golf.
rugby.
horse-riding.
climbing.
this hockey team.
6. Say what you will do if the weather is fine (not less than 10 sentences).

**Example:** If the weather is fine we shall go for a walk.

7. Look at the pictures and say that you are not sure, but think that these children go in for the following kinds of sport.

**Example:** Probably, Nelly goes in for running.

8. Say when they were invented.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cars</th>
<th>Spaceships</th>
<th>Radio</th>
<th>Telegraph</th>
<th>Telephone</th>
<th>Television</th>
<th>Computers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>was/were</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in the 19th century.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in the 20th century.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Say what the government should develop.
The government should develop new industries, culture, the economy, business, the food industry, the film industry.

The Browns are in London. Say when they will go home.

**EXAMPLE:** Ted will go home after he visits the British Museum.

Ted to visit the British Museum.
Fred to buy return tickets.
Mr Brown to finish their business.
Mrs Brown to visit the National Gallery.
The Browns to see the English Prime Minister.
Susie to speak to the famous English professor, to play the final game of cricket.

---

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>myself</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>ourselves</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>yourself</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>himself</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>herself</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>itself</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tom looked at **himself** in the mirror. I'd like to know more about **you**. Tell me about **yourself**. Mrs Grey is rather old. **She** sometimes talks to **herself**. I am not angry with **you**. I am angry with **myself**.
Make the sentences complete using myself, himself, etc.

1. Be careful. Don’t burn ....
2. Betty never thinks about other people, she only thinks about ....
3. When we are alone we sometimes talk to ....
4. He fell off his bike but didn’t hurt ....
5. Fred and Sam! When you ride your bikes, be careful and look after ....

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

international [ˌɪntəˈnæʃənl] college [ˈkɒlɪdʒ]
football player match [mætʃ]
practically [ˈpræktɪkəli] student [ˈstjuːdnt]
sportsmen [ˈspɔːtsmən] result [rɪˈzʌlt]

b) Look up the words in your vocabulary:

coach follow draw
train following punish
training trouble (n) punishment
excellent trouble (v) throw
receive race

c) Read the phrases and sentences to know how to use the words.

**train** [treɪn] (v): train — trained — trained. ‘To train’ means to teach or learn how to do something. We trained the dog to bark when it wants to go out. Every morning Nick spends 2 hours training for the game. The man trained the team for the competition.

**training** [ˈtreɪnɪŋ] (n): ‘Training’ is a course of special exercises, practice, food, etc.; to keep sportsmen healthy and fit

to be in/out of training: He has been out of training for 3 months.

**coach** [kəʊʃ] (n): ‘A coach’ is a teacher or trainer (a person who trains sportsmen for games, competitions).
Mr Smith is the coach of our swimming team. His father is a baseball coach.


trouble (n): trouble — troubles. ‘Trouble’ is a difficult or dangerous situation. Will it be much trouble for you to do this? Did it give you much trouble? Life is full of troubles.

to get into trouble: Nick is a boy who always gets into trouble. Be careful! Don’t get into trouble!

race [reis] (n): a race — races, to have a race, to run a race, to run a race with smb, to lose a race, to win a race. How often do they have boat races? Dan won the race because he is the best swimmer in the team.

excellent [ɪksələnt] (adj): excellent work, excellent health, an excellent wife, ‘Excellent’ is very, very good. The teacher told Dick’s parents that his work in arithmetic was excellent.

draw [drɔː] (n): a draw — draws

to end in a draw: The game ended in a draw (neither side won). Did the basketball game end in a draw? Our football team has had five wins and two draws this season.

receive [rɪˈsɪv] (v): receive — received — received. ‘To receive’ means to get. When did you receive the letter (news, telegram)? He received a good education.1 The lake receives water from this river. Jack received a book for his birthday. I haven’t received a letter from Jim recently.

to receive people (businessmen, teachers, guests): The host of the party received his guests at the door. When are you receiving the delegation from Britain?

punish [ˈpaʊnɪʃ] (v): punish — punished — punished. ‘To punish’ means to make a person suffer for the wrong he has done. Careless drivers should be punished.

punishment [ˈpaʊnɪʃmənt] (n): punishment — punishments.

1 education [ˈɛdukeɪʃən] — образование
‘Punishment’ is the act of punishing. His punishment was very serious, he had to work in the garden for two hours.

**follow** [ˈfɒləʊ] (v): follow — followed — followed. ‘To follow’ means to go or come after. The boy trained his dog not to follow him across the busy street. Spring follows winter. Does Monday follow Sunday? You go first and I will follow you. Follow this road until you reach the church then turn left. To follow a story (a text). The students followed the story with interest. Do you follow me?

**following** [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ] (adj): the following day (week, month). The child was sick in the evening, but on the following day he seemed quite well again. What are you doing the following week?

**throw** [θrɔː] (v): throw — threw — thrown. Is it my turn to throw? He threw the ball a 100 metres. Throw me the ball. She threw off her clothes and jumped into the water.

---

13 Give it a name:

— to go or come after;
— to teach or learn how to do something;
— a person who trains sportsmen;
— to worry;
— a difficult or dangerous situation;
— very, very good;
— to get something;
— to make a person suffer for the wrong he has done;
— the act of punishing.

14 Think of the meaning of the following phrase. How can you say it in Russian?

Don’t trouble trouble until trouble troubles you.

5 Answer the following questions using the new words and word combinations.

1. Who trains sportsmen for international competitions?
2. What do we call members of the football team?
3. What do sportsmen do to keep fit, to be in excellent form?
4. How does the game end if the result is 0:0?
5. What can a coach say to his sportsman if he hasn't done any training for a long time?
6. What kind of student is a boy or girl if he (she) gets very, very good marks?
7. What kind of competition do sportsmen have if two or more boats compete with each other?
8. If you are a teacher, will you use any punishments? How will you punish your students?

16 A sportsman who plays football is a football player. What do we call a sportsman who:
   — plays basketball?
   — plays volleyball?
   — plays cricket?
   — plays golf?
   — plays tennis?
   — plays rugby?

17 Make the sentences complete using: trouble (n), trouble (v), receive (v), follow (v), following (adj).

1. Does your stomach still ... you?
2. May I ... you for a cup of coffee?
3. Do you know the ... people: Mary Kelley, Don Smith?
4. What information have you ... ?
5. Never ... such a bad example.
6. When did you ... this letter?

LET US READ AND LEARN

18 Listen to the song "If It Snows", 60.

IF IT SNOWS

If it snows, if it snows,
What'll you do? What'll you do?
I'll go skiing if it snows,
That's what I will do.
If it rains, if it rains,
What'll you do? What'll you do?
I'll stay at home if it rains,
That's what I will do.

**LET US READ**

19. Read the text and say what is the right answer to the Professor's question and why the text is called "He Was Only Wrong by Two!"

**HE WAS ONLY WRONG BY TWO!**

Jack was the football coach at an American college. He always tried to find good football players for his team. Jack trained his players very well.

They were good at running, jumping, swimming, rowing and playing different games. They often took part in races and practically always won. All Jack's players were tall strong men,
excellent sportsmen and just nice people. They hardly ever gave him trouble and the college team was the best in their state. Regular training, keeping to a diet and a lot of exercises were very important for the sportsmen. They always followed the coach's advice and received good and excellent results in all home and international competitions and matches. They seldom lost a game, hardly ever ended matches in a draw. In fact they practically always won.

The only trouble with some of his football players was their poor knowledge of many school subjects because the sportsmen were often poor at maths, English, etc. and it was not always easy for them to become college students.

One day the coach brought an excellent young football player to the Professor of the college. The Professor had to ask the young player a few questions. The Professor chose very easy questions but the boy couldn't answer them. At last the Professor asked:

"Well, what's five times seven?" 

The student thought for a long time and then answered: "Thirty-six."

1 five times seven – \( 5 \times 7 \) (пятью семь)
The Professor shook his head and looked at the coach. "It's impossible!" he said. "I don't want to punish your team. I understand he can throw a ball very well but, alas,¹ he doesn't know mathematics at all. He can't be a student."

But the coach seriously asked: "Oh, please, sir! Let him become a student. He was only wrong by two."

20 Read out the sentences to describe the pictures.

21 Put the sentences in a logical order and use them as a plan to retell the text:
1. The coach said the new student was only wrong by two.
2. The coach’s sportsmen had a very poor knowledge of all the school subjects.
3. The coach had the best college football team in his state.
4. The football players had regular training to keep fit.

**LET US TALK**

22 Pretend you are: a) the Professor; b) the coach; c) the new football player and retell the story.

23 Discuss the question if the Professor should take the new student into the college.

24 Choose a partner and talk on the following: "Sport in Our Life."

**LET US WRITE**

25 Use the following word combinations and write questions beginning with: what, where, when, why, how, how often.

To train regularly, to receive letters, a college coach, to punish the younger brother, to follow mother’s advice, to trouble the Professor, to end in a draw, to become an excellent student.

¹ alas [æləs] — увы
26 Express the following in English.

1) Если наш тренер приедет в 5.15, мы начнем тренироваться вовремя. 2) Если мой друг уедет в деревню к своему двоюродному брату, он попадет в беду снова. 3) Если матч кончится вничью, пошли мне телеграмму. 4) Когда он придет на стадион, он будет играть в гольф. 5) Когда команда выиграет игру, она получит приз. 6) Когда начнется игра, он бросит мяч.

27 Write a short story about your favourite sport or game.

28 Learn to write these words.

to train, training, coach, trouble (to get into trouble), race, excellent, draw, to end in a draw, to receive, to punish, punishment, to follow, following, to throw (threw, thrown)

Listening Comprehension, ☐ 61, text “An Excellent Student”

Home Reading Lesson 19, text “Two Ways to Count to Ten”
1. Say what you will buy or where you will go if you win (receive, have) a lot of money.

   **EXAMPLE:** If I receive a lot of money, I will go travelling.

2. Make the following sentences complete.

   **EXAMPLE:** I'll throw him a ball when he joins us.

   1. I'll throw him a ball when ...
   2. She will speak to her coach when ...
   3. They will train regularly when ...
   4. I won't trouble Mother when ...
   5. We'll take part in the boat race when ...
   6. Mrs Brown will punish Jim when ...
   7. I'll follow your advice when ...

3. Say how the games ended.

   **EXAMPLE:** The game of football ended in a draw.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Game</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>game of football</td>
<td>0:0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game of cricket</td>
<td>0:0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game of rugby</td>
<td>0:0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game of basketball</td>
<td>0:0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game of volleyball</td>
<td>0:0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Look at the pictures and say what Mrs Green received the other day.

5. Say the things you have bought are really very, very good.
   **Example:** I have bought an excellent sweater.

6. Express the same idea in a different way. Follow the example.
   **Example:** The book belongs to me. It's mine.
   1. The violin belongs to Fred.
   2. The guitar belongs to him.
   3. The piano belongs to Mrs Green.
   4. The painting belongs to my granny.
   5. The sculpture belongs to Roger.
   6. The flute belongs to her.
   7. The cups belong to us.

7. Say that people always (never) do the following action themselves.
   **Example:** Liz always cooks herself.
   1. Liz always cooks ...
   2. Bill never drives the car ...
   3. Janet always cleans the carpet with the vacuum cleaner ...
4. Bob and Sam are small but they always write letters to their grandparents ...
5. The children always wash up ...
6. Colin never turns on TV ...

Say that you (Nelly, we, they) also like (do) the same.

**Example:** Jack always trains in the morning. So does Kate.

1. Jack always trains in the morning. (*Kate*)
2. Pete can play rugby very well. (*We*)
3. Bob and Kate were in the City yesterday. (*Polly*)
4. Albert has done his homework. (*I*)
5. They got excellent marks. (*Ted*)
6. Caroline plays the flute badly. (*You*)
7. Alice has received a letter from him lately. (*Betty*)

---

**LET US LEARN**

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

Neither does she/do we.

- Bill can't play the flute.
- I am not tired.
- We weren't at home at 3.
- I haven't got her address.
- They won't play golf.
- He didn't train yesterday.
- He doesn't buy dairy products at the supermarket.

- Neither can John.
- Neither are we.
- Neither was she.
- Neither has Ann.
- Neither will we.
- Neither did Jack.
- Neither do I.

---

9. Make up as many true sentences as you can.

**Example:** Ann can't cook. Neither can Rob.
We buy white bread and brown bread at the baker’s.
We buy flour, sugar, rice and salt at the grocer’s.
We buy meat (pork, beef), sausages at the butcher’s.
We buy fish at the fishmonger’s.\(^1\)
We buy fruit and vegetables at the greengrocer’s.
We buy dairy products (milk, cream, etc.) at the dairy.\(^2\)
We buy biscuits, cakes at the confectionery.\(^3\)
We buy sweets and chocolates at the sweet shop.

10. Answer the following questions.

1. What can you buy at the baker’s?
2. What can you buy at the butcher’s?
3. You buy sweets at the greengrocer’s, don’t you?
4. Where can you buy cottage cheese?
5. You can buy vegetables at the greengrocer’s. What else can you buy there?
6. Where can you buy fish?

\(^1\) at the fishmonger’s [ˈfɪʃmɒŋɡərz] — в рыбном магазине (отделе)
\(^2\) at the dairy [ˈdeəri] — в молочном магазине (отделе)
\(^3\) at the confectionery [kənˈfekʃənəri] — в кондитерской
1. a bottle of milk (water, juice, oil)
2. a can of lemonade (pepsi, coca-cola)
3. a packet of tea (biscuits)
4. a jar of jam (honey, coffee)
5. a tin of fruit (meat)
6. a bar of chocolate
7. a loaf (loaves) of bread
8. a bag of sugar, flour
9. a carton of yoghurt, cream
10. a pound of bacon
11. a kilo of meat
Yesterday Mrs White went shopping. At the supermarket\(^1\) she bought many things. What did she buy?

She bought:  
- ... of cream  
- ... of tomato ketchup  
- ... of milk  
- ... of soup  
- ... of bread  
- ... of flour  
- ... of tea  
- ... of meat

---

11 Listen to the dialogues. 62. Read, learn them by heart and act them out.

**AT THE GREENGROCER'S**

*Jane:* And now we're going to buy some vegetables. Let's cross the road. There's the greengrocer's over there.  
*Greengrocer:* Good morning, madam. What can I do for you?  
*Jane:* I want a large cabbage\(^2\), please, and half a kilo of carrots.  
*Greengrocer:* Yes, madam. Anything else?  
*Jane:* Some fruit, please, six of those oranges and a kilo of these apples.  
*Greengrocer:* Any grapes\(^3\), madam?  
*Jane:* No, nothing else, thank you.  
 *(On their way to the grocer's.)*  
*Jill:* There is little flour left. Will you go to the grocer's and buy a bag of flour and some sugar, please?  
*Ann:* Shall I also buy a bag of sugar?  
*Jill:* Could you buy two and a packet of tea?  
*Ann:* We haven't got any rice. What about salt?  
*Jill:* There is a lot. But you can buy a bottle of vinegar\(^4\) and two bottles of oil. Is that OK?

---

\(^1\) supermarket [ˈsjuːpermɑːkɪt] — магазин самообслуживания  
\(^2\) a cabbage [ˈkeɪbi] — кочан капусты  
\(^3\) grapes [ɡreɪps] — виноград  
\(^4\) vinegar [ˈvɪndʒə] — уксус
a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

- bacon [ˈbeɪkən]
- sausages [ˈseɪzdʒɪz]
- rice [raɪs]
- company [ˈkʌmpəni]
- a sweet shop
- hopefully (hope + -ful + -ly)
- to do some (the) shopping

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

- pork
- tie
- piece
- a bit
- change
- beef
- wrap
- fat
- pay
- kilo
- cut

c) Read the phrases and sentences to know how to use the words,

**piece [pɪs] (n.):** a piece — pieces, a piece of furniture, a piece of advice, a piece of paper, a piece of cake. There are pieces of broken glass all over the floor. How big piece of cake would you like? Let me give you a piece of advice.

**pound [paʊnd] (n.):** 1. ‘A pound’ is a piece (unit) of money in Great Britain. — How much is it? — It is ten pounds. 2. A measure of weight.¹ Sugar was sold by the pound in Britain but most weights now are metric.

**pay [peɪ] (v.):** pay — paid — paid, paying. ‘To pay’ is to give money for the goods bought. Did you pay 2 pounds for that book? I paid the money yesterday. You must pay me at once.

**a bit [bɪt] (adv) (a little):** a bit tired. Wait a bit! That’s a bit too much to pay. Your answer is a bit too long. Aren’t we a bit early?

**fat [fæt] (adj):** fat — fatter — (the) fattest, a fat man, fat cheeks, fat meat. That man is not very fat. The child has got fat cheeks. I don’t like fat meat. You’ll get even fatter if you eat all those sweets. A fat cat sat on a mat² and ate a fat rat.³

¹ a measure [ˈmeʒə] of weight [wɛt] — мера веса (= 450 g)
² mat [meɪt] — половник, коврик
³ rat [ræt] — крыса
pork [pɔːk] (n): ‘Pork’ is the meat of a pig used as food. How often does your granny cook pork? My grandparents don’t like pork.

cut [kʌt] (v): cut — cut — cutting. ‘To cut’ means to divide. Laura cut the pie into six pieces. I cut my foot. We have to cut the grass today. Don’t cut your fingers on the broken glass. This knife won’t cut. The boys cut the cake in two and ate half each.

wrap [ræp] (v): wrap — wrapped — wrapping, to wrap something. Did you put the book in a box and wrap it up in brown paper? They offered to wrap the shoes in the shop, but I wanted to wear them at once.

beef [bɪf] (n): ‘Beef’ is the meat of a cow used as food. Beefsteak ['bɪfsteɪk] is a thick piece of beef for frying.

tie [taɪ] (v): tie — tied — tying. Is your little brother learning how to tie his own shoes? He tied his dog to the door.

tie (n): I have bought a tie as a birthday present for John.

change [ˈtʃeɪndʒ] (n): ‘Change’ is notes, coins given to you if you pay more (the difference between the price of things bought and the money you’ve paid). Can you give me change for a £1 note? I have no small change. If you buy something that costs three pence and pay for it with a pound, you’ll get ninety-seven pence change.

A

1. Does your mother often buy pork?
2. Who usually goes to the baker’s in your family?
3. What do people buy at the fishmonger’s?
4. Does your brother like sausages?
5. That sportsman is very fat, isn’t he?

B

Five pounds and fifty pence.
Of course, he could.
They usually buy two loaves of bread.
Yes, he does.
Yes, she does. We like fried pork for dinner.
My sister does.
Oh, yes, he is.
They buy fish, caviar and

notes [nəts] — банкноты (бумажные деньги)
6. How many loaves of bread do they buy every day?
7. How much did she pay for that nice piece of beef?
8. Could the grocer give her the change?

other things at the fishmonger's.

15 Make up as many true sentences as you can. Use the following:

— That's a bit too much to pay for ...
— I paid ... pounds for that ...
— He wrapped ... in ... paper.

**EXAMPLE:** That's a bit too much to pay for the caviar.
I paid 2 pounds for that toy.
He wrapped the book in brown paper.

16 Look at the pictures and say what Nelly is cutting.
Read the text and say what the butcher thought of Mary Poppins's visit.

AT THE BUTCHER'S

Mary Poppins is doing some shopping with the children. She has a long shopping list. They have already been to the grocer's and have bought sugar, bacon, salt and rice. They have also been to the fishmonger's and have bought fish for supper. They have been to the baker's and have bought two loaves of white bread. Now Mary finds she will have to go to the butcher's to buy some meat.

"Two pounds of sausages, please, and some best pork," said Mary Poppins. "Sorry, we are in a hurry."

The butcher was a fat friendly man. He was also large and red, rather like one of his own sausages.

"In a hurry," he said to Mary Poppins. "Well, that's a pity! I hoped you had come to talk a bit. We, butchers, you know, like a bit of company. But if you are in a hurry, of course... Two pounds, did you say? Right." And he cut off some sausages and wrapped them up first in white and then in brown
paper, "And I have a very nice piece of pork here. Have a look."

"That looks very good. How much is it?"

"Well, four pounds. So, that comes to eight pounds with the sausages. Is that all right?"

"Yes, thank you."

"Anything else?" he said hopefully. "Maybe some beef?"

"Not today," said Mary Poppins.

The man tied up the parcel and gave it to her,

"Bad weather," he said.

"Don't believe we're going to get any summer at all," answered Mary Poppins. She paid the money and got the change, then they went out of the shop.

18 Ask 6 questions on the text.

19 Read the talk between the butcher and Mary Poppins in the reported speech.

20 Read out the sentences from the text to describe:

— the butcher;
— the talk about the weather.

**LET US TALK**

21 Say what shops Mary Poppins visited that day and what she had bought.

22 Think of a dialogue between:

a) Mary Poppins and the grocer;
b) Mary Poppins and the fishmonger;
c) Mary Poppins and the baker.

23 Say when you last went shopping, where you went and what you bought.
24. Do ex. 2, ex. 3 in writing.

25. Do ex. 7, 8, 9 (5-6 sentences) in writing.

26. Express the following in English.

1) Он храбро защищался. 2) Неожиданно она увидела себя в зеркало. 3) Он очень маленький. Он не может одеваться сам. 4) Она всегда говорит только о себе. 5) По утрам я готовлю завтрак сама. 6) Я видела это сама. 7) Я видела его самого.

27. Describe your last visit to the sweet shop. Use your imagination.

28. Learn how to write these words.

- piece, pound, to pay (paid, paid), a bit, pork, fat, to cut (cut, cut), to wrap (wrapped, wrapped), beef, to tie, change

Listening Comprehension, 63, text "A Laconic Answer"

Home Reading Lesson 20, text "A Trip to Britain"

---

26. Say where you usually buy: pork, bread, vegetables, beef, butter, milk, sweets, meat, cheese, fish.

**Example:** I usually buy pork at the butcher's.

2. Yesterday your mother went shopping,
a) She bought a bottle of oil, a loaf of bread, a can of coca-cola, a packet of tea, a bar of chocolate, a tin of meat, a jar of jam. Say where she bought all these things.

**EXAMPLE:** Mother bought a bottle of oil at the grocer’s.

b) But she forgot to buy something. Ask her about it.

**EXAMPLE:** Did you forget to buy a bottle of juice?

How many sentences can you make, using the words: fat, a bit, cut, wrap, piece, pound, pay, change? Say them for your classmates to agree or disagree.

**EXAMPLE:** P₁: That cat is very fat.  
P₂: That’s right. It is very fat.

4  Pretend you are a teacher. Ask your classmates where and what they usually buy.

**EXAMPLE:** Where do you usually buy sweets?  
What do you usually buy at the fishmonger’s?

5  Give Miss Maple’s answers to the baker’s questions.

*Baker:* Good afternoon, madam. What can I do for you?  
*Miss Maple:* . . . . .  
*Baker:* Brown bread or white bread?  
*Miss Maple:* . . . . .  
*Baker:* How many loaves would you like?  
*Miss Maple:* . . . . .  
*Baker:* Shall I wrap them up or put them in a plastic bag?  
*Miss Maple:* . . . . .

6  Now pretend that one of you is a baker, the other is Miss Maple. Act out the conversation. Don’t forget to change over.

7  Think of 2 or 3 more questions which the baker could ask Miss Maple.

8  Read the example. Complete the sentences with the pronouns that rhyme with the noun before them.
EXAMPLE: This sign is ....
This sign is mine.

1. Those flowers are ....
2. Those doors are ....
3. These teddy bears are ....
4. These furs are ....
5. That quiz¹ is ....

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

One and ones in place of countable nouns.

Don’t use that knife! Use this clean one.
This book is green, that one is red.
I don’t want to wear my old shoes. I want to wear my new ones.
The children I like to teach are the ones who like to learn.

We don’t use one in place of an uncountable noun. In this case we repeat the noun or use no noun at all.

Don’t use that milk. Use this fresh milk.
Don’t put that butter in the porridge. Use this fresh.

9 Use one or ones where possible.

1. Which shirts would you like to see? — The ... on the second shelf.²
2. Which shoes do you like best? — The red ....
3. Which computer do you use? — The ... in the central office.
4. Pour away³ some dirty water and get some clean ....

¹ a quiz [kwiz] — проверочная работа
² shelf [self] — полка
³ pour away [ˈpour] — вылей
5. I think my parents will sell their old car and buy a new one.

6. Please pass me that plate. — Which one? 

7. Which jeans are you going to buy? — The most expensive one.

These are the new words for you to learn:

a) Guess what the following words mean:

a supermarket ['sjupɔːmaːkit], ready-made clothes

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

store pure cotton
cost department wool
blanket necessary woollen
towel sheet
pillow price

c) Read the phrases and sentences to know how to use the words.

store [stɔː] (n): a store — stores. ‘A store’ is a place where goods are sold. A store is a large shop. A clothing store, a furniture store, a grocery store. Where did Mother go? She went to the clothing store. Jack walked into a store to buy a hat.

department [dɪˈpɑːtmənt] (n): a department — departments. ‘A department’ is a separate part. 1. The English department at school will have three new teachers this autumn. Is the police department part of the city government? 2. In a very big shop there are numerous departments — the food department, the men’s clothing department, the grocery department, etc.

a department store is a large shop with many departments for different kinds of goods. Where is the nearest department store?

cost [kɒst] (v): cost — cost — cost. A motorcar costs a great deal of money. I can’t buy it; it costs too much. This cost me 1000 pounds. How much does it cost you?
to keep a car? It will cost you a lot of money to fly to Paris. Carelessness may cost you your life. How much does it cost? It costs a lot.

**price** [prais] (n): a price — prices. ‘Price’ is a sum of money for which a thing is offered, sold or bought. High price, low price. What price did you pay for the house? What is the price of this suit? Are eggs sold at a high price? Prices are going up.

**necessary** [nesisəri] (adj): necessary — more necessary — (the) most necessary. — What is necessary for good health? — Proper food and rest,¹ I think. Sleep is necessary for health. It is not necessary for you to come to school on Sundays. It is a day off.

**cotton** [kotn] (n): Cotton is used to make cloth.² Cotton clothes, cotton oil, cotton goods.

**blanket** [blæŋkit] (n): a blanket — blankets. Blankets are used on beds to keep people warm. Ted’s blanket is always on the floor when he sleeps. I haven’t got a warm blanket.

**sheet** [ʃi:t] (n): a sheet — sheets. ‘A sheet’ is a large piece of cotton cloth. Put clean sheets on the bed. A person usually sleeps with one sheet under and another over him. We’ve got ten cotton sheets.

**towel** [ˈtaʊəl] (n): a towel — towels, a clean towel, to dry something with/on a towel. Her towel is always clean. Dry yourself with a towel! Dry your hands on the towel.

**pillow** [ˈpɪləʊ] (n): a pillow — pillows. Pillows are used to put one’s head on when resting or sleeping. A soft pillow, a hard pillow, a small pillow. Pillows in Britain and Russia are different.

**wool** [wʊl] (n): ‘Wool’ is the soft hair of the sheep and some other animals. — Where do you get wool from? — We get it from Australia and Scotland. When people have backache they often wear wool next to the skin.³

**woollen** [ˈwʊln] (adj): Woollen things are made of wool. Woollen blankets, a woollen coat, a woollen sweater. Have

¹ rest [rest] — отдых
² cloth [klɔt] — ткань
³ skin [skɪn] — кожа (человека)
you got a red woollen coat? He doesn’t like to sleep under a woollen blanket.

**pure** [pjuː] (adj): pure — purer — the purest, pure water, pure milk. I bought a tie of pure silk. Her dress is made of pure wool.

11 Give it a name:
- things which are made of wool;
- something that is used on beds to keep people warm;
- a large shop;
- a sum of money for which a thing is sold;
- the soft hair of the sheep;
- a large shop with many departments;
- something that is used to cover a bed;
- something that is used to put one’s head on;
- water and only water.

12 Make up as many true sentences as you can.

| It is/isn’t necessary for | me | to come here | on Sunday. | you | to go shopping | on Saturday. | them | to do the shopping | her | to go there by car | | him | to pay for it | | us | to receive money | | to train this team | | to buy it | |

13 Complete the following sentences:

a) What’s the price of ... .

**EXAMPLE:** What’s the price of this red blouse?

b) It will cost you a lot of money ... .

**EXAMPLE:** It will cost you a lot of money to buy a new TV set.
British Money

There are a *hundred pence* (p [pi:]) in a *pound*.

**COINS**

- A 50 p coin = fifty pence or 50 p
- A 20 p coin = twenty pence or 20 p
- A 10 p coin = ten pence or 10 p
- A 5 p coin = five pence or 5 p
- A 2 p coin = two pence or 2 p
- A 1 p coin = one pence or 1 p
- A one pound coin = one (a) pound
- A two pound coin = two pounds
- A five pound coin = five pounds

**NOTES**

- A 50 pound note = fifty pounds = £50
- A 20 pound note = twenty pounds = £20
- A 10 pound note = ten pounds = £10
- A 5 pound note = five pounds = £5
£5.80 = five pounds eighty (pence) or five eighty
£1.25 = one pound twenty-five or one twenty-five
13 p = thirteen pence

**LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!**

American Money

There are a hundred pennies—cents (c) in a dollar.

**COINS**

- a 25 cent coin = a quarter = 25 pennies (cents)
- a 10 cent coin = a dime = 10 pennies (cents)
- a 5 cent coin = a nickel = 5 pennies (cents)
- a 1 cent coin = 1 penny (cent)
a 100 dollar note = a hundred dollars = $100
a 50 dollar note = fifty dollars = $50
a 20 dollar note = twenty dollars = $20
a 10 dollar note = ten dollars = $10
a 5 dollar note = five dollars = $5
a 1 dollar note = one dollar = $1
$20.75 = twenty dollars seventy-five cents or twenty seventy-five
$7.80 = seven dollars eighty cents or seven eighty

14 Look at the pictures in "Look, Read and Remember!" and name British and
American coins and notes which you see there.

15 What is a name for:
   a) a 25 cent coin;
   b) a 5 cent coin;
   c) a 10 cent coin.

16 Say:
   £1.35  £8.88  £4.35  10 p  2 p  45 p
   $20.40 $89   $51.30 15 c  21 c  55 c
Look at the pictures and say what their prices are.

**EXAMPLE:** The dress costs twenty-five pounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Book</td>
<td>95 p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super dryer</td>
<td>$20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>$350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purse</td>
<td>£78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High heels</td>
<td>$44.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dress</td>
<td>£25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18. Complete the questions and answer them.

1. How many ... are there in a pound?
2. How many ... are there in a dime?
3. How many ... are there in a dollar?
4. How many ... are there in a twenty pound note?
5. How many ... are there in a nickel?
6. How many ... are there in a quarter?
7. How many ... are there in a hundred dollar note?

**LET US READ**

19. Read the text and say what Mrs Morrison bought for her husband.

**AT SELFRIDGE’S**

“I have some shopping to do. Would you like to come to Selfridge’s with me?” Mrs Morrison asked the girls that afternoon.

1 Selfridge’s — a large department store in Oxford Street, London, especially famous for its food department
The White Sale\(^1\) was on at Selfridge’s, the big store in Oxford Street. Mrs Morrison wanted to buy a blanket, a pair of sheets and some towels.

She bought the towels first. “These are a bargain,”\(^2\) said the shop assistant. “The usual price is 11 pounds for six, the White Sale price is 9.” Mrs Morrison also bought a pair of cotton sheets and a blanket of pure Scotch wool, but no pillows.

“Shall we help you carry the things you’ve bought?” Collette asked. “No, that won’t be necessary. If they send them tomorrow, I’ll get them this week.” “Now let’s go to the ready-made clothes department and look at that skirt, I told you about,” Mrs Morrison said to Jean. “If you like it and if it suits you, you can have it; you need one for school.”

Jean liked the skirt. “How much does it cost?” she asked. It cost 8 pounds, which was not very expensive, but they did not have her size. “We’ll be able to get it for you in about ten days’ time,” said the shop assistant.

Then Mrs Morrison chose a silk \[\text{silk}\] tie for her husband — next Friday would be his birthday — and she bought a pair of gloves for herself.

Then the three of them went to the food department and bought some food for five o’clock tea.

20 Answer the questions:

1. What is “Selfridge’s”?
2. Where is this store situated?
3. What is the “White Sale”?
4. What did Mrs Morrison want to buy?
5. What was the price of the towels?
6. What kind of sheets did she buy?
7. When will Mrs Morrison get all she has bought?

\(^1\) the White Sale — \textit{a sale of towels, sheets, etc.}
\(^2\) a bargain \[\text{ˈbærɪn}\] — сделка (покупка с выгодой)
8. Could the girl buy a skirt? Why?
9. What did Mrs Morrison buy for herself?

21 Give a short summary of the text.

**LET US TALK**

22 Imagine that you are at Selfridge’s with Mrs Morrison. Tell us what you would like to buy there and why.

23 Work in pairs. Think of your conversation with the shop assistant at Selfridge’s. Act out this conversation. Then change over.

24 Tell us in a few words about your last visit to a department store or a supermarket. Say what you bought there, what the prices were, how much money you spent there.

**LET US WRITE**

25 Do ex. 9, ex. 12, ex. 13 in writing.

26 Write a few words about your last visit to a store (a department store, a supermarket, any shop).

27 Learn to write these words.

store, department (department store), to cost (cost, cost), price, necessary, cotton, blanket, sheet, towel, pillow, wool, woollen, pure

Listening Comprehension, 64, text “Mrs Green or Mrs Brown”

Home Reading Lesson 21, text “What Is Shakespeare?”
LESSON 23

Review 3

LET US TALK

1. Let's play “A Boasting Game”: P₁ says what he/she (his/her friends, relatives, etc.) can do himself/herself, etc.; P₂ expresses his/her doubt; P₃ disagrees with P₁.

   **EXAMPLE:**
   
P₁: I can make a vacuum cleaner myself.
   P₂: Can you really make a vacuum cleaner yourself?
   P₃: You can't make a vacuum cleaner yourself.

2. Say what sports and games you (your friends, relatives) will play if the weather is not bad.

   **EXAMPLE:** If the weather is not bad my classmates will play football.

3. We are sure you know something about popular British sports and games. Please say a few words about them.

4. And now say what you know about Russian popular sports and games.

5. Work in pairs. Ask each other questions (and answer them) about what shops you will go to and what you will buy if you go to Paris.

6. Describe your last visit (with your mum) to a department store.
Let us read

7 Read the text and say what you think of Jim.

THE REAL PRICE

Jim was a fourteen-year-old boy who was fond of sports. In fact, he was the best football player at school, but he also skated well, was good at boating, rowing and swimming and went in for jumping and running. He always took part in different school matches and competitions and probably was the cleverest sportsman in his team. He was also inventive. The following story proves it.

One day Jim walked into a store which had a sign outside “Second-hand clothes bought and sold.”

Jim was carrying an old pair of jeans. He asked the shop assistant of the store, “How much will you give me for these?”
The man looked at the jeans and then said: “Two dollars.” He was not polite at all and it was clear he was not much interested in the jeans. Jim looked at the shelves full of pillows and towels, woollen sweaters and silk shirts and then said: “What! I am surprised. I thought they cost more, ... 5 or 6 dollars for example.” “No,” said the man. “They are not worth a cent more than¹ two dollars.”

“Are you sure?” asked Jim.

“Very sure,” said the man.

“Well,” said Jim taking some money out of his bag. “Here’s your money. These jeans were hanging² outside your store with the price tag that said $6.50, but I thought it was too much money. So before paying I decided to come in and to make sure how much they really cost. Thank you. I know the real price now. So will you wrap them for me?”

He saw the shop assistant wrap and tie his jeans, took the change and with the jeans he had bought he left the store. The surprised shop assistant didn’t know what to say.

8 Read out the sentences to describe Jim.

9 Read out what the author of the text says about the shop assistant.

10 Tell Jim’s story in a few words.

¹ are not worth a cent more than — не стоят ни на цент больше, чем
² hang [hæŋ] — висеть
REFERENCE GRAMMAR

THE NOUN

Имя существительное — это такая часть речи, которая обозначает лицо, предмет и отвечает на вопросы кто? что? Существительные могут быть исчисляемыми и неисчисляемыми.

§ 1. Исчисляемые имена существительные имеют два числа: единственное и множественное (a cup — cups, a dog — dogs). В единственном числе подобные имена существительные всегда употребляются с артиклем a/an или the.
There is a pen in the bag.
The pen is new.

§ 2. В восклицательных предложениях, начинающихся с what, подобные имена существительные всегда употребляются с неопределенным артиклем.
What a wonderful emblem!
What a sweet lily!
Исчисляемые существительные во множественном числе в таких предложениях с артиклем не употребляются.
What tall trees!
What sweet toys!
Неисчисляемые существительные в таких предложениях также употребляются без артикля.
What deep snow!
What fresh air!

§ 3. Имена существительные weather, advice, information, knowledge, progress, money, news в английском языке являются неисчисляемыми. Несмотря на то что в русском языке

1 Справочник содержит новый грамматический материал, используемый в учебнике V класса. Основные сведения о частях речи, структуре предложения и т. д. смотри в соответствующих разделах учебников для III и IV классов.
эти существительные могут стоять в форме единственного и множественного числа (advice — совет/советы; information — информация/сведения/сведения; knowledge — знание/знания; progress — достижение/достижения; news — новость/новости), в английском языке эти существительные не употребляются в форме множественного числа, перед ними не используется неопределенный artikel, согласуются они с глаголом в единственном числе и заменяются местоимением it.

It is good advice. I will follow it.
What sad information!
That is good news. Tell me more about it.

Слово hair — волосы также относится к этой категории имен существительных, однако в современном английском языке имеются довольно редко употребляемые формы a hair — волосок, hairs — волоски.

a) My sister's hair is beautiful. It is dark and long.

b) Sorry, there are some hairs on the plate.

§ 4. Имена существительные могут образовываться от имени прилагательных при помощи суффикса -th.
warm (теплый) — warmth (тепло)
long (длинный) — length (длина)
strong (сильный) — strength (сила)
wide (широкий) — width (ширина)

§ 5. С именами существительными, обозначающими называния языков English, French, Indian, Chinese, artikel не употребляется. Однако если в наименование включается имя существительное, то название языка содержит определенный artikel: the English language, the German language.

§ 6. С именами существительными, обозначающими национальность (одно лицо), употребляется неопределенный artikel: a Russian, an American, an Englishman. Однако для обозначения коллективного названия нация часто употребляется определенный artikel: the English — англичане, the French — французы, the Chinese — китайцы.
THE ADJECTIVE

Имя прилагательное — это такая часть речи, которая обозначает признак, качество предмета и отвечает на вопрос какой? который? В предложении имена прилагательные выступают чаще всего в качестве определения (a red book) или именной части составного именного сказуемого. (The boy is tall. He feels bad.)

§ 7. При постановке вопросов к имени прилагательному (типа Какой язык ты учишь? Какой твой любимый цвет?) употребляется вопросительное местоимение what.
  What language are you learning?
  What is your favourite colour?

Однако, если поставленный вопрос содержит как бы выбор (какой — this или that?) из ограниченного числа предметов, употребляется which.
  Which car is yours — the green one or the red one?

§ 8. Имена прилагательные могут образовываться от имен существительных при помощи суффикса -y, при этом значение вновь образованного прилагательного — «обладающий качеством данного объекта»:
  cloud+-y=cloudy — облачный
  rain+-y=rainy — дождевой
  salt+-y=salty — соленый

THE PRONOUN

Местоимение — это такая часть речи, которая указывает на лицо, предметы, их признаки, количество, но не называет их. Местоимения имеют несколько разрядов.
  Личные: I (me), you, he (him), she (her), it, we (us), they (them).
  Притяжательные: my, your, his, her, its, our, their (mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs).
  Возвратные: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.
  Указательные: this — these; that — those; such.
  Вопросительные: who, what, whose, which, etc.
Неопределенные: some, any, somebody, someone, something, anybody, anyone, anything, one.
Отрицательные: no, none, nobody, no one, nothing, neither.
Обобщающие: all, every, everybody, everything, both, either, other, another, each.

§ 9. Вы уже знакомы с притяжательными местоимениями (possessive pronouns), когда они играют роль определения при существительных: my book, his dog, our flat. Однако притяжательные местоимения имеют еще одну форму, которая употребляется самостоятельно. Это независимая, или абсолютная, форма притяжательных местоимений:
a) my book — the book is mine
   his dog — the dog is his
   her hat — the hat is hers
b) Our flat is big, yours is bigger.
   Your house is smaller than ours.
   Give me your pen, please. Mine won't write.

§ 10. Возвратные местоимения (reflexive pronouns). Возвратные местоимения образуются путем прибавления элементов -self (единственное число) и -selves (множественное число) к личным местоимениям в объектном падеже (him, her, it, them) или притяжательным местоимениям (my, our, your).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Единственное число</th>
<th>Множественное число</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>myself</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yourself</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>himself</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herself</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itself</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I saw it myself. Я видел это сам.
Do it yourself! Сделай это сам.
Do it yourselves! Сделайте это сами.
They said it themselves. Они сами это сказали.
He is looking at himself in the mirror. Он смотрит на себя в зеркало.
Don't cut yourself! Не порежься.
Don't hurt yourself! Не ушибись.
§ 11. Неопределенное местоимение one — некто, кто-то имеет форму множественного числа — ones — любые, всякие. Это местоимение часто употребляется вместо имени существительного, упомянутого ранее, чтобы его не повторять.
Ann has got a grey kitten, and I have got a white one.
These are the recommended books. Which ones have you read?
Местоимение one на русский язык обычно не переводится.

§ 12. Для постановки вопросов типа Кто из вас ...? Кто из них ...? употребляются структуры Which of you ...? Which of them ...?
Which of you has passed the exam? Кто из вас сдал экзамен?

THE VERB

Глаголом называется часть речи, которая обозначает действие (состояние). В английском языке имеется четыре группы видо-временных форм:
1) группа неопределенных времен — indefinite (simple) tenses; 2) группа продолженных времен — continuous (progressive) tenses; 3) группа совершенных времен — perfect tenses; 4) группа совершенных длительных времен — perfect continuous tenses.
Все эти грамматические времена бывают настоящими, прошедшими или будущими.
Многие видо-временные формы глагола — это сложные формы, которые образуются при помощи вспомогательных глаголов (be, do, have, shall/will). Вспомогательные глаголы не имеют собственного значения, они лишь указывают на время совершения действия, лицо, число.

§ 13. Очень важно помнить, что глаголы to be, to have, to do могут употребляться и как смысловые глаголы и как вспомогательные.
1) Nick is at home.
   Yesterday we were in the park.
   (to be — смысло́вый глагол)
   Nick is riding a bike.
   The letters were written yesterday.
   (to be — вспомогате́льный глагол)

2) I have a mother.
   He had a farm 3 years ago.
   (to have — смысло́вый глагол)
   I have already read the book.
   He said he had seen the film.
   (to have — вспомогате́льный глагол)

3) She does it every summer.
   When are you going to do the work?
   (to do — смысло́вый глагол)
   When does she have breakfast?
   I don’t want to take any pictures.
   (to do — вспомогате́льный глагол)

§ 14. Глагол to have со значением иметь, обладать в современном английском языке чаще всего выступает в виде структуры have got/has got: I have got a pen (реже I have a pen). При образовании отрицательных предложений наиболее частотными структурами являются: He hasn’t got a pen и He doesn’t have a pen. (Структура He hasn’t a pen употребляется крайне редко.) Однако когда в предложении есть отрицательное местоимение no, употребляется просто форма has/have.

I have no sister.
He has no friends.
They had no work to do yesterday.

§ 15. Глагол to be, выступая в качестве глагола-связки, употребляется для построения составного именного сказуемого:

She is ill.
The rose is sweet.
The orange is bitter.
§ 16. Глаголы to taste, to sound, to feel, to smell также выступают в качестве глагола-связки при образовании составного именного сказуемого.
I feel bad, I don’t feel well. Я чувствую себя плохо, а не хорошо.
The rose smells sweet. Роза сладко пахнет.
The orange tastes bitter. Апельсин горек на вкус.
При этом в русском варианте, как видно из вышеуприведенных примеров, в предложениях имеется простое глагольное сказуемое, и оно определяется наречием.

§ 17. Глагол to like в современном английском языке в предложениях типа: Я люблю, когда идет дождь. Мне нравится, когда на улице солнечно требует после себя дополнение it.
I like it when it rains.
I like it when it is sunny outdoors.

§ 18. Для описания действия, происходящего в момент речи, употребляется настоящее продолженное время (the present continuous tense).
Look! Ann is wearing such a funny hat.
Однако целый ряд глаголов в этом времени обычно не употребляется. К этим глаголам относятся глаголы: to hear, to see, to love, to wish, to want, to hate, to prefer, to know, to understand, to forget, to seem, to believe, to remember, to recognize, to feel.
He knows this fact.
Do you see that tree over there?
При этом, однако, следует иметь в виду, что глагол to feel при описании самочувствия может употребляться как в present indefinite, так и в present continuous:
How are you feeling today?
He doesn’t feel well.

§ 19. The present perfect tense часто используется для описания действия, которое происходило в прошлом и до сих пор продолжается.
She has always lived in that street. Она всегда жила на этой улице (и сейчас живет).
Очень часто время present perfect используется также для описания состояния, которое имело место быть в прошлом и продолжается в настоящий момент.

We have always been proud of you. Мы всегда гордились вами (и сейчас гордимся).

I have always wanted to visit London. Мне всегда хотелось побывать в Лондоне (и сейчас хочется).

§ 20. Способы выражения будущего времени.

В английском языке существуют несколько способов того, как можно рассказать о будущем действии, событии. Для этого употребляются:

1) the future indefinite tense — для выражения однократного или повторяющегося действия в будущем.

We shall meet and talk one of these days.

Will you phone me every week.

Слова и словосочетания, которые обычно указывают на это время: tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week/month/year, etc., in a week/month/year (через неделю/месяц/год), one of these days (на днях).

Часто это время употребляется, если мы решаем что-то сделать в момент речи.

I like this dictionary. I will buy it.

What would you like to have? I'll take chicken soup, I think.

2) оборот to be going to — собираться сделать что-то — для описания запланированного действия, для выражения намерения говорящего. Мы собираемся совершить действие и сообщаем о том, что хотим исполнить то, что мы решили сделать заранее.

I am going to watch a film on television.

Is she going to travel by car?

Этот же оборот употребляется для описания какого-то события в будущем, если говорящему ясно, что оно обязательно произойдет.

Look at the sky! It's going to rain.

— Is it going to snow? — I hope not.

3) the present continuous tense — для описания запланированного действия, которое произойдет в ближайшем будущем.

What are you doing next Monday?

We are having a party tomorrow night.
Очень часто подобным образом употребляются глаголы движения (to come, to leave, to arrive, to go).
When is Allan arriving from Kiev?
We are leaving for Paris next week.
We have bought tickets. We are going to the theatre tonight.

§ 21. Придаточные времени и условия.
В придаточных времени и условия после союзов if, when, as soon as не употребляется будущее время.
When Nick returns, he will call you. Когда Ник вернется, он позвонит вам.
If it rains, we’ll stay at home. Если пойдет дождь, мы останемся дома.
If he doesn’t play with us, we won’t win. Если он не будет играть с нами, мы не выиграем.

§ 22. Для выражения повторяющегося события в прошлом употребляется оборот used to. Это событие, действие происходило когда-то в прошлом, но не происходит сейчас.
They used to swim a lot last summer. Они обычно много плавали летом (а сейчас так много не плавают).
I used to travel with my parents. Я ходил путешествовать с родителями (а сейчас нет).
Однако возможны варианты:
He didn’t use to like skating when he was small.
Did you use to go in for sports at school?
He used not to like riding a horse when he lived in the country.

§ 23. The past continuous tense выражает незаконченное действие в прошлом. Это — длительное действие, происходящее в определенный момент в прошлом.
Nick was having a bath at that time.
Yesterday at four you were playing chess.
При этом то, когда именно произошло то или иное действие в прошлом, может также уточняться при помощи придаточных предложений, вводимых союзами when и while.
Steve was making a phone call when John entered. While Jane was lying on the beach her sister was working hard at home.

The past continuous tense может описывать также действие, которое продолжалось в прошлом в течение указанного отрезка времени и обозначено в предложении такими словосочетаниями, как all day long, all night, the whole evening. Cp.: 
She was cooking all the morning yesterday.

Однако, если указание на отрезок времени происходит при помощи предложения for, используется past simple. Cp.: 
She cooked for two hours and then left (the house).

§ 24. Модальные глаголы.
Глагол should (shouldn’t) передает в английском языке идею долженствования, выражаемую в мягкой форме: в качестве совета, рекомендации.
You should go there! Тебе следует пойти туда.
You shouldn’t speak that loudly. Не следует так громко говорить.

В этом смысле модальный глагол ought to очень близок по значению к глаголу should и может в большинстве случаев заменять его. После глагола ought употребляется частица to.
You ought to have a rest.

§ 25. Страдательный залог (passive voice).
В английском языке имеются два залога — действительный (active voice) и страдательный (passive voice). В предложении Mrs Brown grows flowers in her garden глагол употреблен в действительном залоге, так как Mrs Brown (подлежащее предложения) сама совершает действие, сама выращивает цветы.

Если для говорящего не важно, кто совершает действие, или если он этого не знает, то глагол употребляется в страдательном залоге.
Beautiful roses are grown here. Здесь выращивают великолепные розы.
Образуется страдательный залог при помощи вспомогатель-
ного глагола to be в соответствующей форме (am, is, are, was, were) и второго причастия основного глагола. Для так называемых правильных глаголов эта форма совпадает с формой прошедшего времени. У неправильных глаголов эту форму нужно запомнить: to be + Participle II.

В отрицательных предложениях вспомогательный глагол to be употребляется с частицей not.

Such books are not sold here. Подобные книги здесь не продаются.

В вопросительных предложениях глагол to be ставится перед подлежащим:

Was St. Petersburg founded in 1703?

§ 26. Косвенная речь (reported speech/indirect speech).

Речь, которая передает подлинные слова какого-либо лица, называется прямой речью. Речь, в которой передается содержание того, что было кем-то сказано, называется косвенной.

При изменении прямой речи в косвенную соблюдаются правила согласования времен. Если глагол, который вводит косвенную речь, употреблен в настоящем или будущем времени (present indefinite, present perfect, future indefinite), в косвенной речи время глагола не меняется.

He says he was in Moscow in 2001.

Если глагол, вводящий косвенную речь, употреблен в прошедшем времени (past indefinite), то в косвенной речи обычно происходят следующие изменения:

*present indefinite → past indefinite*

He said: "I think Nelly is right." → He said he thought Nelly was right.

*past indefinite, present perfect → past perfect*

He said: "I lived in the country." → He said he had lived in the country.

*He said: "I have done it." → He said he had done it.*

*future indefinite → future in-the-past*

He said: "I will go there." → He said he would go there.

Если в косвенной речи сообщается о событии, которое является как бы общим фактом, то правило согласования времен в этом случае часто не применяется:

He said Paris is the capital of France.
а) Утвердительные и отрицательные предложения в косвенной речи.
Если после глагола to say, который вводит прямую речь, есть указание на то, к кому эта речь обращена, то глагол to say меняется на to tell smb.

Jeff said to Ann: “I am going to Glasgow.” → Jeff told Ann he was going to Glasgow.

Все личные и притяжательные местоимения изменяются в зависимости от того, от какого лица что-то сообщается.
Pam said to Jill: “I want to talk to you.” → Pam told Jill she wanted to talk to her.
Союз that часто опускается после глаголов to say, to think, to know и т. д.

He remembered (that) she had asked him about it.

В утвердительных и отрицательных предложениях в косвенной речи происходят также следующие изменения:
now → then
today → that day
tomorrow → the next day
the day after tomorrow → two days later
in two days → two days later
ago → before
next year → the next year
last week → the week before, the previous week
here → there
this → that
these → those

Необходимо также обратить внимание на перевод подобных предложений на русский язык.

He said he was writing a letter. Он сказал, что пишет письмо.

She said she lived in Rostov. Она сказала, что живет в Ростове.

They said they had lived in Rostov two years before. Они сказали, что жили в Ростове два года тому назад.

б) Вопросы в косвенной речи.
В вопросах в косвенной речи соблюдается прямой порядок слов, т. е. сказуемое стоит после подлежащего.
“Do you like ice cream?” asked Tom. — Tom asked if I liked ice cream.

Robert asked: “Where has Pete gone?” — Robert wanted to know where Pete had gone.

в) Просьбы и приказания в косвенной речи.

Повелительные предложения в косвенной речи вводятся обычно следующими глаголами: to tell, to order, to ask при этом указывается лицо, к которому обращена просьба или приказание.

Robert to his friend: “Come here!” — Robert asked his friend to come up to him.

Robert to Bob: “Don’t be late!” — Robert told Bob not to be late.

THE ADVERB

Наречие — часть речи, которая указывает на признак действия, на обстоятельства, при которых оно протекает.

He always works hard.

§ 27. В предложении наречие может уточнять а) глагол, б) прилагательное, в) наречие.

а) My granny doesn’t hear well.

б) She is rather small.

в) I didn’t sleep very well.

Наречия неопределенного времени (often, always, seldom, usually, etc.) обычно стоят перед основным глаголом, но после глагола to be.

He often goes to school by bus.

Does she usually get up at seven?

I am seldom unhappy.

Многосложные наречия неопределенного времени (sometimes, generally, occasionally) обычно могут стоять как в начале, так и в конце предложения.

Generally she arrived at 5.

He goes there sometimes.
a (an) [ə|әn] артикль
aberration [әbәrә'ʃәn] аберрация
about [ə'bәут] о, об, около
above [ә'bәv] над
above zero выше нуля
academician [ә'ksіdә'mәjn] академик
accept [ә'kә'sәpt] принимать
accept the invitation принимать приглашение
according [ә'kә'dәәән] согласно, соответственно
accountant [ә'kәuntәnt] бухгалтер
across [ә'krәs] через
act out ['әкт әут] разыграть по ролям
action [ә'kәn] действие
activity [ә'kritәti] активность
actor [ә'ktә] актер

a — noun — существительное
adv — adverb — наречие
con — conjunction — союз
inter — interjection — междометие

add [әd] добавлять, прибавлять
address [әдрес] адрес
admiral [әdәmәrәl] адмирал
advice [әdәvәs] совет

to ask for advice просить совета
to follow the advice следовать совету
to take advice воспользоваться советом
It is good advice. Это хороший совет.
advise [әdәvәns] советовать
afraid [әfrәid] испуганный
to be afraid of smb/smth бояться кого-то/чего-то
Africa [әfrәka] Африка
African [әfrәkan] африканский
after [ә'ktә] после, потом
afternoon [aftənɪn] полдень
in the afternoon в полдень
again [ˈgeɪn] снова
against [əˈgenst] против
to be against smth быть против что-то
age [eɪdʒ] возраст
at the age of в возрасте
agree [əˈɡri:] соглашаться
air [eə] воздух
airport [ˈeəpɔːrt] аэропорт
Alaska [ˈælæska] Аляска
alien [ˈɛlɪən] чужестранец, иностранец
all [ɔl] весь, все
all day long целый день
alone [əˈləʊn] один
along [əˈlɒŋ] вдоль
aloud [əˈlaʊd] вслух
alphabet [ˌælɪˈfæbɪt] алфавит
already [əˈrɛdʒɪ] уже
also [ˈɔlsəʊ] также, тоже
always [ˈɔlvəs] всегда
America [ˈæmərɪka] Америка
Central America Центральная Америка
North America Северная Америка
South America Южная Америка
American [ˌæmərɪkən] американский
among [əˈmʌŋ] среди
amount [əˈmɑːnt] количество
ancient [ˈeɪntʃənt] древний
and [ænd], [ənd] и, а
animal [ˈænɪml] животное
announcer [ˌɑːnənəs] диктор
another [ənˈʌðər] другой
answer [ˈɑːnsə] в ответ; о ответить
Antarctic [æntəˈrɪktɪk] Антарктика
antonym [ˌænˈtəʊnɪm] антоним
any [ɛn] какой-нибудь
anybody [ˈenəbodi] кто-нибудь
anything [ˈenəθɪŋ] что-нибудь
apartment [əˈpɑːrtmənt] квартира (амер.)
apologize [əˈpɑːləgaɪz] извиняться
apology [əˈpɑːlədʒi] извинение
appear [əˈpɪər] появляться
appetite [əˈpɛtɪt] аппетит
applaud [əˈplɔːd] аплодировать
applause [əˈplɔːz] аплодисменты
apple [ˈæpl] яблоко
April [ˈeɪprl] апрель
architect [ˈɑːktɪkt] архитектор
the Arctic Ocean [ˈɑːrtɪk ˈəʊfɪn] Северный Ледовитый океан
aristocrat [ˈɛrɪstɔkræt] аристократ
arm [ɑːm] рука (от ладони до плеча)
armchair [ˈɛmʃeə] кресло
army [ˈɑːmi] армия

to be in the army служить в армию
to go into the army войти в армию
to join the army вступить в армию
around [əˈraʊnd] вокруг
arrange [əˈrɛng] располагать
arrival [əˈrɛlv] прибытие
arrive at/in [əˈraɪv] прибывать в
art(s) [ɔːt(ə)s] искусство
as [æz], [əz] потому что; и в то время как
Asia [ˈeɪziə] Азия
ask [ɑːsk] просить, спрашивать, просить, приглашать

to ask for smth просить что-то
at [æt] y, около
  at first сначала
attack [æk’tæk] атаковать, нападать
attentively [ə’tɛntɪvli] внимательно
audience [ˈɔ:diəns] аудитория, зрители
August [ˈɔ:ɡəst] август
aunt [ænt] тетя
Australia [əˈstrɒliə] Аustralia
automobile [ˌɔ:təməˈbɪl] автомобиль
autumn [ˈɔ:tmən] осень

baby [ˈbeɪbi] ребенок до одного года, младенец
back [bæk] в задней части чего-to; adv. назад
to be at the back of smth в глубине, располагаться в задней части

to be in the back сзади
backache [ˈbeɪkæk] боль в спине, боль в пояснице
bacon [ˈbeɪkən] бекон
bad [bæd] (worst; the worst) плохой (хуже; самый плохой)
badge [bædʒ] значок
badminton [ˈbeɪdmɪntən] бадминтон
bag [bæg] сумка, портфель
baker [ˈbeɪkər] пекарь
  at the baker’s в пекарне
balance [ˈbæləns] баланс, пропорция
balcony [ˈbælkənɪ] балкон
ball [bɔl] мяч
ballet [ˈbeɪlɪt] балет
the Baltic Sea [ˈbaːltɪk ˈsiː] Балтийское море

bank [bæŋk] берег (реки, озера)
bar [bɑː] кусок, брусок
  a bar of chocolate плитка шоколада, шоколадный батончик
barber [ˈbɑːbə] парикмахер (мужской)
at the barber’s в парикмахерской
baseball [ˈbeɪsbɔːl] бейсбол
basic [ˈbeɪsɪk] основной, главный
basic course основной курс
basketball [ˈbeɪskɪtbɔːl] баскетбол
bathroom [ˈbɑːθrʊm] ванная
battery [ˈbeɪtəri] батарея, аккумулятор
battle [ˈbæt(ə)] битва, сражение
be [bi] (was/were; been) быть, находиться
to be able to быть в состоянии (делать что-to)
to be going to собираться
to be lost потеряться
to be on at the cinema идти в кино
What’s on at the “Udarnik”? Что идет в “Ударнике”?
What’s on TV? Что по телевизору?
I have been to London. Я был в Лондоне.
to be on быть включенным
to be off быть выключенным
bear [beə] медведь
beauty [ˈbjuːti] 1. красота 2. красавица
because [bɪˈkɒz] потому что
become [bɪˈkʌm] (became; become) становиться
bed [bed] кровать
  to go to bed ложиться спать
bedroom [ˈbedrʊm] спальня
beef [bɪf] говядина
beer [bɪr] пиво
before [bɪˈfɔː] до, перед
begin [bɪˈɡɪn] (began; begun) начинать
beginning [bɪˈɡɪnɪŋ] начало
behind [bɪˈhaɪnd] за, сзади
believe [bɪˈliːv] верить, полагать
I can’t believe my eyes! Не могу поверить своим глазам!
bell [bɛl] колокол, звонок
belong to smb/smtth [bɛlŋ] принадлежать кому-то/чemu-то
below [bɪˈləʊ] внизу, ниже
Berlin [bɜrˈlɪn] Берлин
besides [bɛzˈsaɪdz] кроме того
best [bɛst] самый лучший
better [ˈbɛtə] лучше, лучший
Better late than never. Лучше поздно, чем никогда.
But better never be late! Но лучше не опаздывать.
between [bɪˈtwɛn] между
Bible [ˈbɪbl] Библия
big [bɪɡ] большой
biography [bɪˈɒɡrəfi] биография
birch [bɜːtʃ] береза
bird [bɜːrd] птица
birth [bɜːθ] рождение
date of birth дата рождения
place of birth место рождения
birthday [ˈbɜːθdeɪ] день рождения
Happy birthday to ...! С днем рождения!
bit (a bit) [bɪt] немного, чуть-чуть
sitter [ˈsɪtə] 1. горячий 2. резкий, сильный, окостеневший
It’s bitter cold! Ужасно холодно!
black-and-white film черно-белый фильм
blackboard [ˈblækbɔːd] школьная доска
block [bloʊk] квартал
to walk two blocks пройти два квартала
blossom [ˈblɒsəm] цвет, цветок
to be in blossom быть в цвету
blouse [blauz] блузка
blow [bləʊ] (blew; blown) дуть
blue [bluː] голубой, синий
board [bɔːd] борт
on board the ship на борту корабля
boaster [ˈboʊstər] хвастун
boat [bɔːt] лодка, корабль
to go boating кататься на лодке
body [ˈbɒdi] тело
bonfire [ˈbɒnfər] большой костер
book [bʊk] a книга; в бронировать, заказывать заранее
bookcase [ˈbʊkkeɪs] книжный шкаф
boot [bʊt] ботинок
boring [ˈbɔrɪŋ] скучный
born [bɔrn] рожденный
to be born родиться
boss [bɒs] босс, начальник
both [bəʊθ] оба
bottle [ˈbɒtl] бутылка
box [bɒks] коробка, ящик
boy [boʊ] мальчик
bracket [ˈbrekət] скобка
given in brackets данные в скобках
branch [brænt] ветка, ветвь
brave [breɪv] храбрый
bravery [ˈbreɪvərɪ] храбрость
bread [bred] хлеб
break [breɪk] (broke; broken) ломать, разбивать.
to break a law нарушить закон

breakfast [brēkfast] завтрак
to have for breakfast на завтрак

breathe [breð] дышать
breeze [bris] легкий ветерок, бриз
bridge [bridʒ] мост
bright [brait] яркий
bring [brɪŋ] (brought; brought) принести

bronze [brɔ:nz] бронзовый
brother [breðə] брат
brown [braʊn] коричневый
brush up ['braʃ ʌp] освежать в памяти

build [bɪld] (built; built) строить
builder [bɪldə] строитель
building [bɪldɪŋ] здание
burglar ['bɜːɡlə] вор, грабитель
burn [bɜːrn] (burnt; burnt) гореть
bus [bʌs] автобус
by bus автобусом
number 7 bus автобус номер 7
bus stop автобусная остановка
at the bus stop на остановке автобуса

business [ˈbaɪznɪs] дело, занятие
busy [ˈbaɪzi] 1. занятой 2. оживленный
but [bʌt] но

butcher [ˈbʌtʃə] мясник
at the butcher's в мясном магазине (отделе)

butter [ˈbʌtə] масло

buy [bjuː] (bought; bought) покупать
by [baɪ] у, около
by heart наизусть
by the way между прочим
bye/bye-bye [bai/baɪ ˈbai] пока

California [ˈkælɪfərniə] Калифорния
call [kɔːl] 1. звать 2. звонить
calm [kælm] успокаивать
Calm down! [kælm ˈdaʊn] Успокойся!
can [kæn] консервная банка
a can of coca-cola банка кока-колы
can [kæn] (could) мочь

Could I have ...? Не мог бы я ...?
Canada [ˈkænəda] Канада
canal [ˈkænəl] канал
Canberra [ˈkænəbə] Канберра
candy [ˈkændi] конфета (амер.)
cap [kæp] кепка, шапка
capital [ˈkæpɪtl] столица
Capitol [ˈkæpɪtl] Капитолий
car [kɑːr] машина
by car машиной
care [kɛə] забота
to take care of smb/smtth заботиться о ком-л./чём-л.
careful [ˈkærəfəl] осторожный
carefully [ˈkærəflɪ] осторожно
careless [ˈkærəliς] беспечный, неосторожный
carelessly [ˈkærəliəs] неосторожно
carpet [ˈkærɪpt] ковер
carrot (carrots) [ˈkærət] морковь
carry [kærɪ] носить
to carry mail перевозить почту
cartoon [ˈkɑːtun] мультфильм
the Caspian Sea [ˈkæspiən ˈsiː] Каспийское море
castle [ˈkæsəl] замок
catch [kætʃ] (caught; caught) поймать, схватить
to catch a plane (train, bus) уе-
choose [tʃu:] (chose; chosen) выби- 
рать.
Christian [krɪstɪən] христиан
Christmas [krɪsməs] Рождество
chronicle [krənɪkl] летопись
chrysanthemum [krɪsənθəm] хри-
зантема
church [tʃɜː] церковь

cinema [ˈsɪmən] 1. кино 2. кино-
театр
cinema-goer [ˈsɪnəmədɔːr] люби-
tель кино
What's on at ...? Что идет в ...?
circle [səkəl] обводить кругом
circus [ˈsɜːkəs] цирк; adj цирко-
вой.
city [ˈsɪti] большой город
class [klæs] класс
after classes после занятий
before classes до занятий
in class в классе
business class первый класс (о би-
лете на самолет)
tourist class второй класс (о би-
лете на самолет)
classical [ˈklæsɪkl] классический
classroom [klæsrum] классная ком-
ната, класс
clean [klɛn] adj чистый; v чистить,
убирать
cleaning day день уборки
clever [ˈklevər] умный
cold [klaʊd] облако
cloak [klaʊk] клоун
clothing [klaʊðɪŋ] одежда
club [klʌb] клуб
coat [kɔt] пальто, пиджак, куртка
coffee [kɔfi] кофе
coin [kɔn] монета
gold coin золотая монета
cold [kɔld] холодный
collect [kəlekt] собирать, коллекционировать
collection [kə'lekcʃən] коллекция
collector [kəlektər] коллекционер
colonist ['kələnist] колонист, житель колонии
colony ['kələni] колония
colour [ˈkələr] цвет
colour film цветной фильм
coloured [ˈkələrd] раскрашенный
colourful [ˈkələfʊl] красочный, яркий
column [ˈkɔlmən] колонка
combination [ˌkəmbəˈneɪʃən] сочетание, комбинация
word combination словосочетание
come [kəm] (came; came) приходить
Come and see me some day. Заходи ко мне как-нибудь.
to come back возвращаться
to come from 1. быть родом
2. приходить из/с
to come home приходить домой
comedy [ˈkʌmədi] комедия
comfortable [kəmˈfərəbl] удобный
common [kəmən] общий
commonly [kəməni] обычно
least commonly used наименее часто используемое
most commonly used наиболее часто используемое
compare [kəmˈpeə] сравнивать, сравнять
compete [kəmˈpiːt] соревноваться
competition [kəmˈpiːtʃən] соревнование
complete [kəmˈpliːt] заканчивать
compliment [ˈkʌmplɪmənt] комплимент
to pay a compliment делать комплимент
compose [kəmˈpəʊz] сочинять, составлять
compound [kəmˈpɔund] сложное слово
computer [kəmˈpjuːtər] компьютер
concert [ˈkɔn strekt] концерт
conductor [kənˈdəʊktər] 1. дирижер
2. кондуктор
confectionery [kənˈfekʃənəri] кондитерская
conference [ˌkɔnˈfriːns] конференция
conservative [kənˈsɜrvətɪv] консерваторный
consist (of) [kənˈsɪst] состоять (из)
consult [kənˈsəlt] консультировать
continent [ˈkɒntɪnənt] континент
continental [ˌkɒntɪˈnentəl] относящийся к материкну
continue [kənˈtɪnju] продолжать
conveniences [ˌkənˈvɛniənsiz] удобства
modern conveniences современные удобства
convenient [kənˈvɪnɪənt] удобный
conversation [ˌkənˌvɜːʃən] беседа
cook [kʊk] готовить
cooker [ˈkʊkə] плита
cooking day день приготовления пищи
copy out [ˈkɒpi aʊt] списывать, переписывать
corner [ˈkɔrnər] угол
in the corner в углу
correct [kərˈɛkt] правильный
correctly [kərˈɛktli] правильно
corresponding [kərˈsəʊndɪŋ] соответствующий

cost [kɒst] (cost; costs) стоить

How much does it cost? Сколько это стоит?

costume [ˈkəʊstjʊm] костюм (маскарадный)

cottage [ˈkɒtɪdʒ] коттедж

cottage cheese [ˈkɒtɪdʒ ˈtʃiːz] творог

cough [kɒf] кашель; в кашлять

count [kɔʊnt] считать

countable [ˈkaʊntəb(ə)l] исчисляемое

country [ˈkʌntri] 1. страна 2. сельская местность

in the country за городом

cover [ˈkʌvə] 1. обложка, покрытие; в покрывать

cowboy [ˈkɔʊboɪ] ковбой

cream [kriːm] сливки

create [kriˈeɪt] создавать

criminal [ˈkrɪmɪnəl] преступник; ad преступный

critic [ˈkrɪtɪk] критик

criticize [ˈkrɪtɪsaɪz] критиковать

crocodile [ˈkrɒksədʌl] крокодил

crossword [ˈkrɒrzwɜːd] кроссворд

cry [kraɪ] 1. плакать 2. кричать

to cry for help звать на помощь

Cuba [ˈkjuːbə] Куба

culture [ˈkʌltʃə] культура

cup [kʌp] чашка

cupboard [ˈkʌbɔːd] шкаф, кухонный шкаф, полка

curious [ˈkjʊəriəs] любопытный

curtain [ˈkɜːtən] занавес

curtsy [ˈkɜːtsi] делать реверанс

custom [ˈkʌstəm] обычай

So many countries so many customs. Сколько стран, столько и обычав.

customs [ˈkʌstəms] таможня

at the customs на таможне

customs officer [ˈkʌstəmsˌɒfɪsə] таможенник

cut [kʌt] (cut; cuts) резать; рубить

daffodil [dəˈfeɪdəl] нарцисс

dairy [ˈdeɪri] молочный

dairymaid [ˈdeɪrɪmeɪd] дойка, молочница

dairy products молочные продукты

daisy [ˈdeɪzi] маргаритка

danger [ˈdʒændər] опасность

in danger в опасности

out of danger вне опасности

dangerous [ˈdʒændərəs] опасный

dark [dɑːk] темный

It is getting dark. Темнеет.

day [deɪ] день

the day before yesterday вчера

day off выходной день

the other day на днях

death [dɛθ] смерть

dead [dɹɛd] мертвый

dear [dɛə] дорогой

Oh, dear! O, Боже!

December [dɪˈʃəmbər] декабрь

decide [dɪˈsaɪd] решать

decorate [dɪˈkəreɪt] украшать

decoration [dɪˈkəreɪʃən] украшение

decorator [dɪˈkərətər] декоратор

depth [dɛpθ] глубина

definite [ˈdefɪnɪt] определенный

definitely [ˈdefɪnɪtli] определенно

delay [dɪˈleɪ] а задержка; в задерживать(ся), опаздывать
Delhi ['dɛli] Дели
democratic [ˌdeməˈkrætɪk] демократичный
denote [ˈdɛnət] обозначать
dentist [ˈdentist] зубной врач
department [dɪˈpɑːmt] отдел
    department store [dɪˈpɑːmt stɔːr] универмаг
departure [dɪˈpɑːtʃər] отправление
depend [dɪˈpend] зависеть
        to depend on smb/smt зависеть от кого-то/чего-то
    It depends! Судя по обстоятельствам.
describe [dɪˈskraɪb] описывать
desk [dɛsk] партог
        at the desk за партой
dessert [dɪˈzɜːrt] десерт
        for dessert на десерт
detailed [ˈdetɪliəd] детальный
detective film [dɪˈtɛktɪv ˈfɪlm] детектив
develop [dɪˈveləp] развивать
devoted to smb [dɪˈvɔːttid] преданный кому-то
dialogue [dɪˈlɔːɡ] диалог
diary [ˈdaɪəri] дневник
dictionary [dɪkˈsɪənri] словарь
die [daɪ] умирать
diet [dɪˈeɪt] диета
        to be on a diet быть на диете
        to keep to a diet придерживаться диеты
differ [ˈdɪfər] отличаться
difference [ˈdɪfərəns] отличие
different [ˈdifərənt] различный
difficult [ˈdɪfɪkəlt] трудный
dime [daim] монета в 10 центов
dining room [ˈdɪnɪŋ rʊm] столовая (в доме)

dinner [ˈdɪnə] обед, ужин
to have for dinner на обед
dirty ['dɜːrti] грязный
disagree [dɪˈsɛɡri] не соглашаться
disappear [dɪˈsɪpər] исчезать
discover [dɪˈskʌvər] открывать
discoverer [dɪˈskʌvərər] первооткрыватель
discovery [dɪˈskʌvəri] открытие
discuss [dɪˈskʌs] обсуждать
dislike [dɪˈslɪk] не любить
divide [dɪˈvaɪd] делить
do [dəʊ] (did; done) делать
doctor [ˈdɒktər] врач
documentary (film) [ˌdɔkjuˈmentəri] документальный фильм

dollar [ˈdɒlər] доллар
dolphin [ˈdɒlfɪn] дельфин
door [dɔː] дверь
doubt [daut] сомнение
down [daʊn] вниз

downstairs [ˌdaʊnˈsteɪə] внизу, вниз

drama [ˈdramə] драма
draw I [draɪ] (drew; drawn) рисовать
draw II игра виньетку
        to end in a draw заканчиваться вничью
dress [dres] в платье; в одеждах

drink [drɪŋk] (drank; drunk) пить
driver [ˈdraɪvər] водитель
dull [dʌl] скучный, пасмурный
duty [ˈdjuːtɪ] долг, обязанность

each [ɛtʃ] каждый
    each other друг друга
ear [ɛə] ухо

earache [ɪəˈreɪk] боль в ухе
earth [ɜːθ] земля
east [est] восток

easy ['izi] легкий

eat [it] (ate; eaten) есть

education ['edjukei*n] образование

egg [eg] яйцо

Egypt ['igipt] Египет

eUmb [elbou] локоть

elect [lekt] избирать, выбирать

electricity [lek'trɪstɪ] электричество

elephant ['el*fant] слон

else [els] еще

what else что еще

where else где/куда еще

who else кто еще

emblem ['emblem] эмблема

emperor ['empərə] император

empire ['empa*] империя

empty ['empti] пустой

encourage [in'kərɪdʒ] поощрять, вдохновлять

end [end] в конце; в закончивать(ся)
at the end в конце

up to the end до конца

enemy ['eni*] враг

engineer ['enjə'nər] инженер

enjoy [in'dʒɔɪ] получать удовольствие

enumerate [ɪn'jʊmɛrət] пронумеровать

equivalent [ɪk'veɪlənt] эквивалент; adj. равный

especially [ɪ'speʃəli] особенно

Europe ['juːrəp] Европа

European ['juːroʊpɪən] европейский

even ['ɛvən] даже

evening ['ɪvnɪŋ] вечер

in the evening вечером

on Monday evening в понедельник вечером

ever [evə] когда-нибудь

everybody ['evri'bɔdi] каждый

everything ['evriθɪŋ] все

examine [ɪk'zæmɪn] n. экзамен; v. экзаменовать

elegant ['elgənt] отличный

excite [ɪk'saɪt] волновать

excuse [ɪk'skjuːz] извинять

Excuse me ... Извините

exercise ['eksəsaɪz] упражнение
to do exercises делать упражнения

exercise book ['eksəsaɪz bʊk] тетрадь

exhibition ['eksɪbɪʃn] выставка

exist [ɪk'zɪst] существовать

expensive [ɪk'spentɪ] дорогой, стоящий дорого

explain to (smb) [ɪk'spleɪn] объяснять (smb)

exploration [ɪk'splɔrəʃn] исследование

explore [ɪk'splɔː] исследовать

explorer [ɪk'splɔrə] исследователь

express [ɪks'pres] выражать

extra [ˈɛkstra] дополнительный

face [feɪs] лицо

to face повернуться лицом

fact [fækt] факт

factory [ˈfæktəri] фабрика

fairy tale [ˈfeəri tɛl] сказка

fall [fɔːl] (fell; fallen) падать

false [feɪls] неверный

family [ˈfæməli] семья

famous for smth ['feɪmos] известный чем-то

fantastic [ˈfæntəstɪk] потрясающий

far [fɑːr] далекий
far from далеко от
the Far East Дальний Восток
fare [fɛə] плата за проезд
farm [fɔːm] 1. ферма; 2. обрабатывать землю
fast [fɑːst] adj быстрый; adv быстро
fat [fɑːt] толстый, жирный
father [ˈfɑːðər] отец
favourite [ˈfævərɪt] любимый
feature (film) [ˈfiːtə] художественный фильм
February [ˈfɛbruəri] февраль
feel [fiːl] (felt; felt) чувствовать
to feel bad чувствовать себя плохо
to feel like doing smth иметь желание что-то сделать
festival [ˈfesəvəl] фестиваль
few [fjuː] несколько, мало
a few [fjuː] несколько
fewer [ˈfjuːər] меньше
fiction [ˈfɪkʃ(ə)n] художественная литература
field [fild] 1. поле 2. отрасль
fight [fɑːt] 1. драка 2. сражение; в драчах, сражаться
to have a fight сражаться
to fight against smth сражаться против что-то
to fight for smth сражаться за что-то
fill in ['fɪl ˈɪn] вставить
film [fɪlm] фильм
historical film исторический фильм
find [faind] (found; found) найти
to find out найти; выяснить
fine [fain] прекрасный; хороший
finger [ˈfɪŋɡər] палец
finish [ˈfɪnɪʃ] в заканчивать
fire [fɑːr] 1. огонь 2. камин 3. пожар
fireman [ˈfɑːrmən] пожарный
fireplace [ˈfɑːpɔːls] камин
firework [ˈfaɪəwɜːk] фейерверк
fish [fɪʃ] 1. рыба; 2. ловить рыбу
fisherman [ˈfɪʃəmən] рыбак
flat [flet] квартира
flight [flɪt] полет
floor [flɔː] 1. пол 2. этаж
on the ground floor на первом этаже
flour [flɔːr] мука
flower [ˈflɔːrə] цветок
flu [fljuː] грипп
flute [flut] флейта
to play the flute играть на флейте
fly [flai] (flew; flown) летать
to fly east (west) лететь на восток (запад)
fog [fɒɡ] туман
foggy [ˈfɒɡi] туманный
folk [fɔːk] народный
follow [ˈfɔːləʊ] следовать
following [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ] следующий
fond [fɒnd] любящий
to be fond of smth/smt любить что-то/кого-то
to be fond of doing smth любить делать что-то
food [fud] пища, еда
foolish [ˈfuːliʃ] глупый
foot [fut] (feet [fіt]) нога/стул (ноги)
to go on foot идти пешком
football [ˈfutbɔːl] футбол
foreign [ˈfɔrɪn] иностранный
forest [ˈfɔːrst] лес
forget [fəɡet] (forgot; forgotten) забывать
gangster ['ɡænstə] гангстер

garden ['ɡɑːdn] сад
gas [ɡæs] газ

general ['dʒenərəl] генерал
gasoline ['dʒæsəl] газolina

german ['dʒəmən] немецкий
germany ['dʒəməni] Германия
get [ɡet] (got; got) получать, доставать
to get on with smb ладить с кем-то
to get into a car сесть в машину
to get out of a car выйти из машины
to get on a train (bus) сесть на поезд (автобус)
to get off a train (bus) сойти с поезда (автобуса)
to get ready приготовиться
to get together собраться
to get up вставать
to get up in front of smth перед чем-то

giant ['dʒænt] n. великан; adj. гигантский
giraffe ['ɡɪrəf] жираф
girl [ɡɜːl] девочка
give [ɡiv] (gave; given) давать
to give back возвращать
to give a call to smb звонить кому-л.
glass [ɡlɑːs] стакан, стекло
to be glad быть довольным
to go [ɡo] (went; gone) идти, ехать
to go in for sports заниматься спортом
to go on telling smth продолжать рассказывать что-л.
God [ɡod] Бог
My God! Боже мой!
Thank God! Слава Богу!

gallery [ˈɡæləri] галерея
game [ɡeim] игра
gold [gɔːld] n золото; adj золотой (сделанный из золота)
as good as gold золотой (человек)
a heart of gold золотое сердце
gold coin золотая монета
golden [ˈɡəʊldən] золотой; золотистый
golden hair золотистые волосы
good [ɡʊd] хороший
Good luck! Удачи!
government [ˌgʌvərnmənt] правительство
grammar [ˈɡræmər] грамматика
grandfather [ˈɡrændfɑːðər] дедушка
grandmother [ˈɡrændmʌðər] бабушка
grandparents [ˈɡrændpɛrənts] дедушка и бабушка
grass [ɡrɑːs] трава
grasshopper [ˈɡræʃhɔpər] кузнецк
great [ɡreɪt] 1. великий 2. потрясающий, отличный
It’s great! Великолепно! Потрясающе!
You look great! Ты отлично выглядишь!
greedy [ˈɡriːdi] жадный
green [ɡriːn] зелёный
greengrocer [ˈɡriːŋɡrɑːsər] зеленщик, продавец отдела «овощи-фрукты»
at the greengrocer’s в магазине (отделе) «овощи-фрукты»
greeting [ˈɡriːtɪŋ] приветствие
on greeting приветствуй
grocer [ˈɡrɑːsər] бакалейщик
at the grocer’s в бакалейном отделе
group [ɡrʌp] а группа; у группировать, классифицировать
grow [ɡrəʊ] (grew; grown) расти
guess [ɡes] догадываться
guest [ɡest] гость
guitar [ˈɡɪtər] гитара
to play the guitar играть на гитаре
gun [ɡʌn] ружье

hair [heə] волосы
half [hɑːf] (halves [ˈhɑːvz]) половина (половинки)
It’s half past 5. Половина шестого.
hall [hɔːl] холл, прихожая
Halloween [ˌhælməˈɔnɪ] канун Дня всех святых
hamburger [ˈhæmbɜːrɡər] гамбургер
hamster [ˈhæmstər] хомячок
hand [hænd] рука (ладонь)
handicraft [ˈhændɪkrɑːf] урок труда
Hanoi [ˈhɒnɔɪ] Ханой
happen to smth/smth [ˈhæp(ə)n] случаться с кем-то/чем-то
happy [ˈhæpi] счастливый
Happy New Year! С Новым годом!
hard [hɑːd] adj упорный, тяжёлый;
adv упорно, тяжело, сильно
hard-boiled eggs [ˌhɑːdˈboɪld ɛgz] яйца всмятку
hardly [ˈhɑːrdli] едва, почти
hardly ever [ˈhɑːrdli ˈevə] очень редко, почти никогда
hare [heə] заяц
harm [hɑːm] вред
to do (a lot of) harm причинять (много) вреда
harvest [ˈhɑːrvɪst] урожай, сбор урожая
hate [hæt] в ненависти; в ненависти
haughty [ˈhɔːti] надменный, высокомерный
have (has) [hæv] ([hæv]) (had; had) иметь
to have got (has got) иметь
to have to (has to) иметь необходимость что-то сделать
hawthorn [ˈhɔːθɔrn] боярышник
he [hi] он
head [hed] голова
head teacher [hɛd ˈtɪʃə] директор школы
headline [ˈhɛdlaɪn] заголовок
hear [hɪər] (heard; heard) слышать
heart [hɑrt] сердце
by heart наизусть
heartache [ˈhɑrtɛk] боль в сердце
Hello! [ˈhɛloʊ] Привет!
help [help] помогать
to help about the house помогать по дому
to help about the house day день помощи по дому
to help sb with some subject помогать кому-л. по предмету
her [hər] ее, её, о ней
here [hɪər] здесь
Here it is. Вот, пожалуйста!
Hi! [haɪ] Привет!
hide [haɪd] (hid; hidden) прячется
hide-and-seek [ˌhɪdəndˈsiːk] прятки (детская игра)
high [hای] adj высокий; adv высоко
hill [hɪl] холм
him [hɪm] его, ему, о нем (кого?)
his [hɪz] его (чей?)
historic [hɪˈstɒrɪk] исторический
history [ˈhɪstəri] история
hobby [ˈhɒbi] хобби, любимое занятие
hockey [ˈhɒki] хоккей
hold [hɔld] (held; held) держать
holiday [ˈhɔliːdi] 1. праздник 2. каникулы
holly [ˈhɒli] остролист
home [həʊm] дом, домой
at home дома
homework [ˈhɒmərwork] домашнее задание
to do homework выполнять домашнее задание
honest [ˈɒnɪst] честный
honey [ˈhʌni] мед
honeysuckle [ˈhʌniˈsʌkl] жимолость
hop [hɑp] хмель
hope [həʊp] надеяться
hopscotch [ˈhɑpskɑtʃ] классики (детская игра)
horn [hɔrn] рог, рожок
horror [ˈhɔrər] ужас
horror film (movie) фильм ужасов
horse [hɔrs] лошадь
hospital [ˈhɒspɪtəl] больница
host [hɒst] хозяин
hostess [ˈhɒstiʃ] хозяйка
hot [hɒt] горячий
hot and cold running water водопровод
hour [aʊə] час
house (houses) [həʊs] ([ˈhauzə]) дом (дома)
how [hau] как, каким образом
How are you? Как дела?
How are you getting on? Как по- 
живаетесь?
How do you do? Здравствуйте!
how often как часто
how long сколько долго, сколько времени
how many сколько (с исчисляе 
мымы сущ.)
How do you like it? Как тебе это 
нравится?
How've you been? Как ты пожи- 
вал это время?
How long have you been here? 
Сколько времени ты здесь?
humble [hæmbl] скромный, застен-
чивый, робкий
humid [ˈhjuːmɪd] влажный
humorist [ˈhjuːmərɪst] юморист
hundred [ˈhʌndrəd] сто
hungry [ˈhʌŋgri] голодный
 to be hungry быть голодным, хотеть есть
hunt [hant] охотиться
hunter [ˈhʌntər] охотник
hurry [ˈhʌri] в спешке; в спешить
 to be in a hurry спешить
Hurry up! Поторопись!
hurt [hɜːt] (hurt; hurt) 1. болеть 
2. причинять боль

ice [aɪs] лед
ice cream [aɪs ˈkrɛm] мороженое
Iceland [ˈaɪslænd] Исландия
idea [ˈaɪdɪə] мысль

That's a great (good) idea! Заме- 
чательная идея (мысль)!
identification [ˌaɪˌdɛntɪˈfɪkeɪʃn] опозна-

вание, установление подлинности
ill [ɪl] больной
to be ill болеть
illness [ˈɪlnəs] болезнь
illustrate [ɪlˈstreɪt] показать на при-
мере
imagination [ɪˌmæджəˈneɪʃn] воображе-
ние
imagine [ɪˈmæʤən] представить, во-
образить
immediately [ɪmˈdiːəli] немедленно
important [ɪmˈpɔːrtənt] важный
impossible [ɪmˈpɔsəbl] невозможный
in [ɪn] в (де?)
in an hour через час
include [ɪnˈkluːd] включать
indeed [ɪnˈdiːd] в самом деле
independence (from smth) 
[ɪnˌdɪpendəns] независимость (от 
кого-л.)
India [ˈɪndə] Индия
Indian [ˈɪndɪən] индийский
the Indian Ocean Индийский 
океан
Indians [ˈɪndɪənz] индийцы
industrial [ɪnˈdʌstriəl] промышлен-
ный
industry [ɪnˈdʌstri] промышленность
informal [ɪnˈfɔːrməl] неофициальный
information [ˌɪnˌfɔrmeɪʃn] сведения
instead [ɪnˈsted] вместо чем-то
instrument [ˈɪnstrəmənt] инструмент
interested [ɪnˈtɜːstɪd] заинтересован-
ный
 to be interested in smth интересо-
ваться чем-то
interesting [ɪnˈtɜːstɪŋ] интересный
international [ˌɪntəˈnɛʃənəl] междуна-
родный
interval [ɪn'təvəl] интервал
interview [ɪn'tɪvjuː] а интервью; с браком интервью
into [ɪnto] в (куда?)
invent [ɪn'vent] изобретать
invitation [ɪn'veɪtʃən] приглашение
invite [ɪn'veɪt] приглашать
Ireland [ˈaɪrəld] Ирландия
irregular [ɪrˈɡeərəl] неправильный
island [ˈaɪlənd] остров
it [ɪt] оно
It takes smb 3 hours to do it. Нужно 3 часа, чтобы сделать это.
It's been a long time. Много времени прошло.
It was nice meeting you. Правильно было познакомиться.
Italian [ɪˈtæliən] итальянский
Italy [ˈaɪtəli] Италия

jump [dʒʌmp] прыгать
June [ˈdʒuːn] июнь
junior [ˈdʒuːniər] начальный
just [dʒʌst] 1. только что 2. как раз

K
keep [kiːp] (kept; kept) держать, содержать
to keep a diary вести дневник
to keep fit поддерживать форму, быть в форме
to keep shut держать закрытым
key [kiː] ключ
kill [kɪl] убивать
kilometre [ˈkɪləmɪtə] километр
kind [kaɪnd] п род. вид; adj добрый
It's very kind of you. Как мило с вашей стороны.
king [kaɪŋ] король
kingdom [ˈkaɪndəm] королевство
kiss [kɪs] целовать
kitchen [ˈkɪtʃɪn] кухня
kitten [ˈkɪtn] котенок
knife [naɪf] (knives [naɪvz]) нож (ножи)
knock [nɒk] стучать
know [nəʊ] (knew; known) знать, узнавать
knowledge [ˈnɒlɪdʒ] знание, знания

J
jacket [ˈdʒækɪt] куртка, жакет
jam [dʒæm] джем, варенье
January [ˈdʒænjuəri] январь
jar [dʒɑːr] банка
a jar of jam банка варенья
jeans [dʒɛnz] джинсы
job [dʒɒb] работа
jogging [dʒɒɡɪŋ] бег разминкой
join smb [dʒɔɪn] присоединиться к кому-л.
joke [dʒɒk] шутка
journey [dʒɔːni] путешествие
to go on a journey отправиться в путешествие
juice [dʒuːs] сок
July [dʒʊˈlaɪ] июль

ladder [ˈlædər] лестница (переносная)
lake [læk] озеро
lamp [læmp] лампа
land [lænd] а земля, суша; с приоставать к берегу
language [ˈlaŋwɪdʒ] язык
large [lɑːɡ] большой
last [lɑːst] adj последний, прошлый
   last month в прошлом месяце
   last week на прошлой неделе
   last year в прошлом году
last [lɑːst] adv в последний раз;
   v длиться
late [leɪt] поздний
   to be late (for) опаздывать (на)
lately [ˈleɪtli] недавно, за последнее время
laugh [lɑːf] смеяться
   to laugh at smb/smth смеяться над кем-то/чем-то
law [lɔː] закон
lawn [lɔːn] лужайка
lawyer [ˈlaʊər] юрист, адвокат
lazy [ˈleizi] ленивший
lead [liːd] (led; led) вести, руководить
   leap frog [ˈleɪpfrɒɡ] чеширд (детская игра.)
   to play leap frog играть в чеширд
learn [lɜːn] (learnt; learnt) учить, узнавать
   to learn by heart учить наизусть
leave [liːv] (left; left) покидать, уезжать из
   to leave for уезжать в
   to leave Rostov for Moscow уезжать из Ростова в Москву
left [lɛft] левый
   on the left слева
   to the left налево
leg [leg] нога (от ступни)
legend [ˈledʒənd] легенда
length [lɛŋθ] длина
less [lez] меньше
lesson [ˈlesn] урок
   at/in the lesson на уроке
letter [ˈletə] 1. буква 2. письмо
liberty [ˈlibəri] свобода
   Liberty Island остров Свободы
The Statue of Liberty Статуя Свободы
library [ˈlaɪbrəri] библиотека
   at the library в библиотеке
lick [lɪk] лизать, облизывать
lie [laɪ] ложь; v лгать, говорить неправду
   to tell a lie лгать, говорить неправду
life [laɪf] жизнь
like [laɪk] v любить, нравиться; adv как, подобный
lily [ˈlaɪli] лилия
line [laɪn] 1. линия 2. направление
   (железнодорожное)
lion [ˈlaɪən] лев
lip [lɪp] губа
list [lɪst] список
listen to smb/smth [ˈlɪsn] слушать
   кого-то/чего-то
literary [ˈlɪtərəri] литературный
little [ˈlɪtl] adj маленький; adv мало
   a little немного
living room [ˈlɪvɪŋ rʊm] жилая комната
loaf [ləʊf] буханка
   a loaf of bread буханка хлеба
local [ˈləʊkəl] местный, ближайший к дому
   at the local cinema-house в ближайшем кинотеатре
lock [lɒk] закрывать на ключ; запирать
locked [lɒkt] закрытый на ключ
logical [ˈlɒgɪkl] логический
lonely [ˈləunli] одинокий
long [lɔŋ] длинный
look [lʊk] смотреть, глядеть
to look around оглядываться
to look at смотреть на
look for исказать
Look over there! Посмотри вон туда!
to look through просмотреть
to look like выглядеть
You look great! Ты прекрасно выглядишь!
lord [lɔrd] лорд
The House of Lords палата лордов (в парламенте)
Los Angeles [ləʊs ˈæŋɡələz] Лос-Анджелес
lose [luːz] (lost; lost) терять
to be (get) lost потеряться
lots of, a lot of [lət] много
loud [laʊd] громкий
loudly [ˈlaʊdlɪ] громко
love [laʊv] в любви; в любить
to be in love быть влюбленным
lovely [ˈlʌvlɪ] прелестный
luck [lʌk] удача
Good luck! Удачи!
lucky [ˈlʌki] везучий
luggage [ˈlæɡɪdʒ] багаж
lump [lʌmp] кусок
a lump of sugar кусок сахара
lunch [lʌntʃ] второй завтрак, обед, ланч
to have for lunch на второй завтрак/обед/ланч
angry [ˈæŋɡri] неприятный, грустный
Madrid [ˈmædrɪd] Мадрид
magazine [ˈmægəˌziːn] журнал
magic [ˈmædʒɪk] волшебный
main [meɪn] главный, основной
mainland [ˈmeɪnəʊland] материк
majesty [ˈmeɪdʒɪstɪ] величество
His Majesty! Его величество!
make [meɪk] (made; made) делать, заставлять
to be made of быть сделанным из
make up составлять
man (men) [mæn] (men) мужчина (мужчины)
manner [ˈmænə] правило поведения, манера
good manners хорошие манеры
to have table manners уметь вести себя за столом
many [ˈmeɪn] много (с именяемым сочет.)
map [mæp] карта (географическая)
March [mætʃ] март
marmalade [ˈmɑːməlæd] мармелад, джем
married [ˈmærd] женатый, замуж

married to быть замужем за, женатым на
marry (smb) [mɑːri] жениться на
match [mætʃ] в матч
match [mætʃ] в подобрать под пару
material [ˈmeɪtəriəl] материал
maths [mæθs] математика
May [meɪ] май
may [meɪ] можно
May I do it? Можно мне сделать это?
maybe [ˈmɛbə] возможно, может быть
me [mi] мне, меня, мной, обо мне
meal [miːl] трапеза, еда
  to have meals принимать пищу, есть
mean [miːn] (meant; meant) 1. значить 2. иметь в виду 3. хотеть сказать
meaning [ˈmiːnɪŋ] значение
means (of transport) [miːnz] средства передвижения
meat [miːt] мясо
medicine [ˈmedsə] 1. медицина (исч. 2. лекарство (исч.)
meet [miːt] (met; met) встретить, встретиться
  on meeting при встрече
member [ˈmembə] член
memorial [ˈmɛmərɪəl] мемориал
memory [ˈmɛməri] память
mention [ˈmenʃən] упоминать
message [ˈmesɪdʒ] устное сообщение
metal [ˈmetəl] металл
method [ˈmeθəd] метод
metre [ˈmiːtər] метр
Metro [ˈmeθrəʊ] метро
  to go by Metro схать на метро
middle [ˈmiːdəl] середина
  in the middle of smth в середине чего-то
midnight [ˈmɪdnɔːt] полночь
  at midnight в полночь
mild [maɪld] мягкий
militiaman [ˈmɪlɪtɪəmən] милиционер
milk [mɪlk] молоко
milkman [ˈmɪlkman] молочник
million [ˈmɪljən] миллион
millionaire [ˈmɪljəˈnaɪər] миллионер
mineral [ˈmɪnərəl] минерал
ministry [ˈmɪnɪstrɪ] министерство
mirror [ˈmɪrər] зеркало
Miss [mɪs] мисс (незамужняя женщина)
miss [mɪs] опаздывать, пропускать
  to miss the train (bus, plane) опоздать на поезд (автобус, самолет)
You can't miss it! Это невозможно пропустить!
the Mississippi [ˈmɪsəsɪpɪ] Миссисипи (река)
mitten [ˈmɪtn] варежка
mix [mɪks] мешать, смешивать
mixed [mɪkd] перемешанный
model [ˈmɒdl] модель
modern [ˈmɒdən] современный
  modern conveniences современные удобства
moment [ˈmɒmənt] мгновение
Monday [ˈmʌndi] понедельник
money [ˈmʌni] деньги
monkey [ˈmʌŋki] обезьяна
month [mʌnθ] месяц
monument [ˈmʌnɪmənt] to smb поставить памятник кому-л.
moon [mʌn] луна
moral [ˈmɔrəl] мораль
more [mɔːr] больше
morning [ˈmɔrɪŋ] утро
  in the morning утром
  on Tuesday morning во вторник утром
morning glory [ˈmɔrɪŋ ˈɡlɔːri] пьед
Moscow [ˈmɒskəʊ] Москва
most [mɔst] большинство
mother [ˈmʌðə] мама
Motherland ['mʌðəlænd] Родина, Отчизна.
mountain ['maʊntən] гора
mouse [maʊs] (mice [maɪs]) мышь (мыши)
mouth [maʊθ] рот
move [mʊv] двигаться, переезжать
move in (to) переезжать в.
Mr ['mɪr] мистер
Mrs ['mɪrz] миссис (замужняя женщина)
Ms [mɪs] госпожа (неизвестно, замужем или нет)
much [mʌtʃ] много
museum ['mjʊziəm] музей
music ['mjʊzɪk] музыка
musical ['mjʊzɪkl] adj музыкальный;

n музыкальный фильм
must [mʌst] должен, должно быть
my [maɪ] мой

Negro [ˈnɪgrəʊ] негр
neighbour [ˈnɪbə] сосед
never [ˈnevə] никогда
It's never late to learn! Учиться никогда не поздно!
next [nɛkst] следующий
next to рядом с
new [nju] новый
newspaper [ˈnjʊspɛpər] газета
newsreel [ˈnjuːsriːl] программа новостей
New York ['njuːjəkˈcɪə] Нью-Йорк
New Zealand ['njuː ˈzɛlənd] Новая Зеландия
nice [naɪs] милый, приятный
nickel [ˈnɪkl] монета в пять центов
nickname [ˈnɪkmɪn] прозвище
night [naɪt] ночь

at night ночью
no [nəʊ] нет
noble [ˈnəʊbl] благородный
nobody [ˈnəʊbdeɪ] никто

don [dɔn] я кивок; и кивать головой
noise [noɪz] шум
noisy [ˈnoɪzɪ] шумный

normal ['nɔrml] нормальный
Normandy ['nɔrməndi] Нормандия
north [nɔθ] север

in the north на севере
northeast [nɔrˈeast] северо-восток

dose [nɔs] доза
nothing [ˈnʌθɪŋ] ничего

novel [ˈnʌvəl] роман

November [ˈnɔvembə] ноябрь
nowadays ['nɔwədəz] в настоящее время

nurse [nɜːs] нянья, санитарка, медсестра

nut [nʌt] орех.
object ['ɑbjekt] предмет
obligation [ə'bli:ɡeɪʃn] обязательство
occupation ['ɔkˌkeɪʃn] занятие, профессия
ocean ['ɔsi:n] океан
October ['ɒkˈtəʊbə] октябрь
of [ɔv] предел родительного падежа
of course конечно
offend [ˈɒfend] обижать
offer [ˈɑfə] предлагать
office [ˈɑfɪs] офис, государственное учреждение, кабинет
officer [ˈɑfɪsə] офицер
official [əˈfɪʃl] в государственный служащий; adj официальный
often [ˈɔfn] часто
oh [ɔ] ой
Oh, my! Боже мой!
Oh, no! Восклицанием сожаления
oil [ɔil] растительное масло
OK [əʊˈkeɪ] нормально; так, как надо
old [əʊld] старый
on [ɑn] на
once [ˈwʌns] однажды
open ['əʊpən] открывать
opera ['ɔpərə] опера
opinion [əˈpinʃn] мнение
opposite [əˈpɑsɪt] напротив
optimism ['ɔptəˌmɪz(ə)m] оптимизм
or [ɔ] или
orange [ˈɔrɪndʒ] апельсин
orange juice [ˈɔrɪndʒ dʒuːs] апельсиновый сок
order [ˈɔrəd] порядок
in order по порядку

other [ˈʌðə] другой, другие
the other day на днях
the other way round наоборот
ought to ['ɔt] быть должен, морально обязан
our [ɔə] наш
outdoors [ˈautdɔːz] на свежем воздухе
out loud [ˈaut laud] вслух
over [ˈəʊvə] над
to be over заканчиваться
overcoat [ˈəʊvkət] пальто
own [əʊn] собственный

the Pacific Ocean [ˈpæsɪfɪk ˈoːsi:n] Тихий океан
packet [ˈpækɪt] пакет, пачка
page [peɪdʒ] страница
pain [peɪn] боль
paint [peɪnt] рисовать красками
painting [ˈpeɪtnɪŋ] картина
pair [peə] пара
a pair of shoes пара туфель
to work in pairs работать в парах
pajamas [ˈpeɪdʒəməz] пижама
palace [ˈpeɪls] дворец
pancake [ˈpænkeɪk] блин
paper [ˈpeɪpə] 1. бумага 2. газета
papers [ˈpeɪpəz] 1. газеты, журналы 2. документы
paragraph [ˈpærəɡrɑf] параграф
Paris [ˈpaːris] Париж
parliament [ˈpærəˌleɪmənt] парламент
parrot [ˈpeərɔt] попугай
part [pɑ:t] 1. роль 2. часть; в расставаться
to take part принимать участие
party [ˈpɑːti] вечеринка
at the party на вечеринке
pass [pɑːs] передавать
passage [ˈpæsædʒ] коридор
passenger [ˈpɑːsnɪdʒə] пассажир
past [pɑːst] после
at 10 past 8 в 10 минут девятого
patient [ˈpeɪʃənt] пациент
pay (for something) [peɪ] (paid; paid) платить (за что-то)
PE (Physical Education) [piˈɛdʒ] физкультура
peace [piːs] мир
peaceful [piːsfl] мирный
Peking [ˈpɪŋkɪŋ] Пекин
pen [pen] ручка
pencil [ˈpensl] карандаш

to draw in pencil рисовать карандашом
penny [ˈpeni] пенни (монета)
people [ˈpipl] люди, народ
pepper [ˈpəpə] перец
perform [pərˈfɔːm] представлять, играть
performance [pərˈfɔːrəns] представление, спектакль
performer [pərˈfɔːmər] исполнитель
perhaps [pəˈperʃ] возможно
permanent [pərˈmərnənt] постоянный
person [ˈpɜːsn] человек, личность
personal [ˈpɜːsnəl] личный
pet [pɛt] любимое животное
petal [ˈpɛtəl] лепесток
phone [fəʊn] звонить по телефону
photo [ˈfəʊtəʊ] фотография

to take photos снимать (фотоаппаратом)

phrase [frez] фраза
piano [ˈpiənəʊ] пианино

to play the piano играть на пианино
picture [ˈpɪktʃər] 1. картина 2. фотография
in the picture на картине

to take pictures снимать фотоаппаратом

piece [piːs] кусок
pig [pɪɡ] поросенок
pillow [ˈpɪləʊ] подушка
pirate [ˈpaɪrət] пират

That's a pity! Какая жалость!

place [pleɪs] место

de place of interest достопримечательность

plan [plæn] план

by plane самолетом

planet [ˈplænɪt] планета

plantation [ˈplæntəʃən] плантация

plate [pleɪt] тарелка

platform [ˈpleɪfɔːm] платформа (железнодорожная)

play [pleɪ] играть

to play a part играть роль

to play snowballs играть в снежки

pleasent [ˈplezənt] приятный

pleasure [ˈpleʒər] удовольствие

Plymouth [ˈplɪməθ] Плимут (город)

pocket [ˈpəʊkɪt] карман

poem [ˈpoʊm] стихотворение, поэма

police [ˈpəʊli] полиция

police officer офицер полиции

policeman [ˈpəʊliˌmən] полицейский

polite [ˈpəʊli] вежливый
politician [pol'tijən] политик
politics [pol'tiks] политика
poor [pər] бедный
poppy [ˈpɒpi] мак
popular with smb [ˈpʊpjoʊlə] популярный среди кого-то
pork [pɔːk] свинина
porridge [ˈpɔːridʒ] кашица (овсяная)
port [pɔːrt] порт
portrait [ˈpɔːrtrɪt] портрет
possible [ˈpɒsəbəl] возможный
post office [ˈpəʊst ˈɒfsɪʃ] почта
postman [ˈpəʊstmæn] почтальон
potato (potatoes) [ˈpɑːtəʊ] картофель (картофелина)
pound [paʊnd] 1. единица веса (450 г) 2. фунт стерлингов (английская денежная единица)
power [ˈpaʊər] власть
practise in [ˈpræktɪs] практиковаться в
preparation [ˌprɛrəˈteɪʃən] приготовление
prepare for smth [prɪˈpreɪ] готовиться к чему-то
preposition [ˌprɛrɪˈpoʊzɪʃən] предлог
prescribe [priˈskrɪb] прописывать
to prescribe a medicine for smth [prɪˈskrɪb ə ˈmiːsɪnd fə ˈsmθ] прописывать лекарство от чего-то
present [ˈprezənt] настоящее
president [ˈpriːzɪdənt] президент
pressure [ˈprɛʃər] давление
   blood pressure [ˈbrʌd prəʃər] кровяное давление
pretend [prɪˈtend] притворяться
pretty [ˈprɪti] adj хороший, весьма
   Pretty bad! Очень плохо!

previous [prɪˈvɪəs] предыдущий
price [prais] цена
primrose [ˈprɪmroʊz] примула
prince [prɪns] принц, князь
princess [ˈprɪnses] принцесса
prize [praɪz] приз
probably [ˈprɒbəbli] возможно
problem [ˈprɒbləm] проблема
profession [prəˈfesʃən] профессия
programme [ˈprɔɡræm] программа
progressive [ˈprəɡresɪv] прогрессивный
promise [ˈprɒmɪs] обещать
pronunciation [ˌprɒnʌŋʃən] произношение
proper [ˈprɑːpər] соответствующий
   proper form [prəˈpʊə faːm] соответствующая форма
   proper name [ˈprɑːpər neɪm] имя собственное
protect [prəˈtektn] защищать
proud [prəʊd] гордый
   to be proud of smth [prəʊd əv ˈsmθ] гордиться чем-то
prove [pruːv] доказывать
proverb [ˈprɔvər b] пословица
public [ˈpʌblɪk] публика
pulse [pʌls] пульс
punish [ˈpʌniʃ] наказывать
punishment [ˈpʌniʃmənt] наказание
pupil [ˈpjuːpl] ученик
puppy [ˈpʌpi] щенок
pure [pər] чистый
purple [ˈpɜːpl] фиолетовый
put [pʊt] (put; put) кладь
   to put down [pʊt dʌn] записывать
   to put on smth [pʊt ən ˈsmθ] надевать чем-то
   to put smth in order [pʊt ən ˈɔːdə] распологать по порядку
puzzle [ˈpʌzl] головоломка
qualification [kwɔːlɪfɪkeɪʃn] квалификация
quarter [ˈkwɔːtə] 1. четверть 2. монета в 25 центов
at a quarter past 5 в четверть шестого
at a quarter to 5 в без четверти пять
queen [kwɪn] королева
question [ˈkwɛstʃn] вопрос
quick [kwɪk] быстрый
quickly [ˈkwɪklɪ] быстро
quiet [ˈkwɪt] спокойный, тихий
quotation [ˈkwəʊteɪʃn] цитата
quote [kwəʊt] цитировать

rainy [ˈreɪni] дождливый
rather [ˈrɑːðə] довольно
raven [ˈreɪvən] ворон
reach [rεtʃ] достичь
react [rεkt] реагировать
read [rεd] (read; read) читать

to read to oneself читать про себя
Read to yourself! Читай про себя!
reader [ˈrɛdə] читатель
ready [ˈredi] готовый
real [riːl] реальный, действительный
really [ˈriːli] действительно
reason [ˈriːzn] причина
receive [rɪˈsɪv] 1. получать 2. при-нимать (людей)
recently [ˈrɛsntli] недавно
recognize [rɪˈkəɡnaɪz] узнавать
recover [rɪˈkʌvə] поправиться
red [red] красный, рыжий
refer [rɪˈfɜːr] относить, отсылать
reference material [rɪˈfɜːrəns] справоч-ный материал
referring to [rɪˈfɜːrɪŋ ˈtiː] относящийся к
refuse [rɪˈfjuːz] отказать(ся)
regular verbs [ˈrɛɡjʊlər ˈvɜːzbi] пра-вильные глаголы
regularly [ˈrɛɡjʊləli] регулярно
regulation [ˌregjʊleɪʃn] инструкция
relation [rɪˈleɪʃn] родственник
relative [rɪˈleɪtɪv] родственник
relax [rɪˈleks] расслабляться
relaxation [rɪˈleksəˈkeɪʃn] расслабление
remember [rɪˈmembə] помнить
reported [rɪˈpɔːtɪd] сообщенный, переданный
reported speech косвенная речь
respectable [rɪˈspektəbl] уважаемый
rest [REST] 1. отдых; v отдыхать
restaurant [rest(ə)nt] ресторан
retell [rɪˈtel] пересказывать
return [rɪˈtɜːn] возвращаться
review [rɪˈvjuː] повторить
revue [rɪˈvjuː] обзорение
rhyming twin ['raɪmɪŋ twiŋ] слово, звучащее в рифму
rice [raɪs] рис
rich [rɪʃ] богатый
ride [raɪd] (rode; ridden) ехать на (велосипеде, лошади)
right [rایt] 1. правильный 2. правый
on the right справа
to the right направо
Say it right. Скажи правильно.
rise [raɪz] (rose; risen) ставить, подниматься
river [ˈraɪvər] река
road [rɔːd] дорога
rocket ['rɒkɪt] ракета
role play ['rɔːl pliː] разыгрывать по ролям
round [raʊnd] круглый
round-up lessons уроки повторения
row [rəʊ] гребля
rowing ['rəʊɪŋ] гребля
royal [ˈrɔɪəl] королевский
rubber ['rʌba] ластик
ruins [ˈruɪnz] руины
rule [rʊl] 1. правило; v править, управлять
as a rule как правило
ruler [ˈrʊla] линейка
run [rʌn] (ran; run) бегать

sad [sæd] печальный
to look sad выглядеть печальным
sadly [ˈsædlɪ] печально
sail [sæl] 1. парус; v плавать под парусом
sailor ['sælə] матрос
saint (saint, st) [seɪnt] ([sɛnt]) святой
salesman ['seɪlzmaŋ] продавец
salt [sɔːlt] соль
salty ['sɔːlt] соленый
same [seɪm] тот же самый, такой же
sandals [ˈsænd(ə)lz] босоножки
sandwich [ˈsænwɪdʒ] бутерброд
San Francisco [ˈseɪn frənˈskɪskoʊ] Сан-Франциско
Saturday [ˈseɪtədi] суббота
sauce [səʊs] соус
save [seɪv] 1. спасать 2. экономить, откладывать
say [seɪ] сказать
to say to smb сказать кому-л.
to say it for smb сказать за кого-л.

scarecrow [ˈskreɪkroʊ] чучело
scenery ['skɪnərɪ] декорации
school [skjuːl] школа
to go to school ходить в школу
science [ˈskaɪns] наука
scientific [saɪəntɪfɪk] научный
scientist [ˈsaɪəntɪst] ученый
Scotland [ˈskɒtlənd] Шотландия
screen [skriːn] экран
sculpture [ˈskʌlptʃər] скульптура
sea [siː] море
seaman [ˈsiːmən] моряк
seaside [ˈsiːsaɪd] побережье моря
at the seaside на побережье
to go to the seaside поехать на море
season [ˈseɪzn] сезон, время года
seat [siːt] место
secretary [ˈsɛkrətri] секретарь
section [ˈsektʃən] раздел
see [siː] (saw; seen) видеть
See you later. Увидимся позже.
Let me see. Дай подумать.
seed(s) [si:d(z)] зернышки, семена
seem [siːm] казаться
seldom [ˈseldəm] редко
selfish [ˈselfiʃ] эгоистичный
sell [sel] (sold; sold) продавать
send [send] (sent; sent) посылать
sense [sens] чувство
a sense of humour чувство юмора
sentence [ˈsentəns] предложение
separate [ˈseprət] отделять
September [ˈseptəmber] сентябрь
serious [ˈsəriəs] серьезный
seriously [ˈsəriəsli] серьезно
set [set] (set; set) 1. накрывать
2. садиться (о солнце)
to set the table накрывать на стол
settlement [ˈsetlmənt] поселение, поселок
several (times) [ˈsɛvərl] несколько (раз)
shale [ʃeɪl] (shook; shaken) трясти
to shake a head покачать головой
to shake hands with smb пожать руку кому-то
to shake smb by the shoulder потрясти кому-то за плечо
shall [ʃɔːl] буду, будем, будет
Shall I do it? Мне сделать это?
shave [ʃav] бриться
she [ʃi:] она
sheep (sheep) [ʃiːp] овца (овцы)
sheet [ʃiːt] простыня
ship [ʃip] корабль
to go by ship ехать кораблем
on board the ship на борту корабля
shirt [ʃɜːt] рубашка
shoe [ʃu:] (shoes) ботинок (ботинки)
shop [ʃɔp] магазин; v ходить в магазин
to do the shopping делать покупки, ходить в магазин
to go shopping делать покупки
shop assistant [ˈʃɔp əˈsɪstənt] продавец
short [ʃɔːt] короткий
shorts [ʃɔːts] шорты
shoulder [ˈʃəʊldə] плечо
shout at smb [ʃaʊt] кричать на ком-то
show [ʃəʊ] показать; v показывать
to show off красоваться, рисоваться
shower [ˈʃauə] душ
to have/take a shower принимать душ
Siberia [ˈsɪbrə] Сибирь
sick [sɪk] больной
side [saɪd] 1. сторона 2. бок
sign [saɪn] n знак; v подписывать
silk [sɪlk] шелк
silver [ˈsɪlvə] n серебро; adj серебряный
since [saɪns] с тех пор как
sing [sɪŋ] (sang; sung) петь
to sing to the music петь под музыку
single (ticket) ['sɪŋgl] билет в одном направлении
sink [sɪŋk] раковина
sister ['sɪstə] сестра
sitting room ['sɪtɪŋ rʊm] гостиная
situated ['sɪtʃuətɪd] расположенный
to be situated располагаться
situation [sɪˈteɪʃən] ситуация
size [saɪz] размер
What size shoes do you wear? 
Туфли какого размера вы носите?
skate [skæt] n (skates) конек (коньки); v кататься на коньках
ski [ski] n (skis) лыжа (лыжи); v кататься на лыжах
skin [skɪn] кожа, шкура
skip [skɪp] прыгать через веревочку
skirt [skɜːt] юбка
slave [slev] раб
sledge [sledʒ] n сани; v кататься на санках
sleep [slɛp] n сон; v (slept; slept) спать
slice [slaɪs] тонкий кусочек
slim [slɪm] стройный
slow [sloʊ] медленный
slowly [ˈsləʊli] медленно
smell [smel] н запах; v (smelt; smelt) пахнуть
smoke [smɔʊk] n дым; v курить
snail [snɛɪl] улитка
snake [snæk] змея
sneeze [snɪz] чихать
snow [snɔʊ] снег
It often snows here. Здесь часто идет снег.
It is snowing hard. Идет сильный снег.
snowball ['snɔʊbɔːl] снежок
snowdrop ['snɔʊdrɒp] подснежник
snowman ['snɔʊmən] снеговик
to make a snowman лепить снеговика
so [soʊ] так, итак
soap opera ['sɔʊp ɔrə] многосерийный телесериал
sofa ['sɔʊfə] диван
soft [sɔft] мягкий
soft-boiled eggs [softˈbɔɪld ɛgz] яйца всмятку
soft drink ['sɔft drɪŋk] безалкогольный напиток
soldier ['sɔldər] солдат
some [sʌm] некоторые, несколько
somebody ['sʌmboði] кто-нибудь
something ['sʌmθɪŋ] что-нибудь
sometimes ['sʌmtaɪmz] иногда
son [sʌn] сын
song [sɔŋ] песня
Sorry! ['sɔri] Извините!
to be sorry сожалеть о (чем-то)
soul [sɔul] душа
sound [saʊnd] n звук; v звучать
That sounds good! Звучит заманчиво!
soup [sɔup] суп
sour cream [ˌsɔːr kriːm] сметана
south [sɔʊθ] юг
space [speɪs] 1. космос 2. пространство
spaceship [ˈspeɪʃɪp] космический корабль
Spain [spæn] Испания
Spanish [ˈspæniʃ] испанский
speak [spik] (spoke; spoken) разговаривать
special [ˈspeʃəl] специальный
specialist ['speʃɪst] специалист
specialize [ˈspɛʃəlaɪz] специализироваться

spell [spel] (spelt; spelt) писать; называть по буквам

spelling [ˈspelɪŋ] правописание

spend [spend] (spent; spent) тратить; проводить (время)

to spend money on smth тратить деньги на что-то

spices [ˈspæsɪz] специи

spoon [spʊn] ложка

sport [spɔrt] спорт

sports ground [spɔr茨 ɡraʊnd] спортивная площадка

spy [spai] шпион

square [skweə] квадрат; adj квадратный

in the square на площади

stadium [ˈsteɪdiəm] стадион

stage [steɪdʒ] сцена; ставить на сцене

on the stage на сцене

stairs [steəz] лестница

stalls [stɔlz] балконы

in the stalls в балконах

stamp [stæmp] марка

stand [stænd] (stood; stood) стоять

standard lamp [ˈstændəd lɛmp] торшер

star [stɑːr] 1. звезда 2. кинозвезда

start [stɑːt] начать; в начинать

state [steɪt] 1. штат 2. государство

statement [steɪˈmɛnt] утверждение

statue [ˈstætjuː] статуя

stay [steɪ] 1. останавливаться 2. оставаться

to stay at a hotel останавливаться в отеле

to stay with smth останавливаться у кого-то

steal [stɪl] (stole; stolen) красть, воровать

still [stɪl] все еще

stone [stʌn] камень

stop [stɒp] остановка; останавливаться

store [stɔːr] магазин (большой)

storm [stɔːrm] шторм, буря

a storm of applause шквал аплодисментов

story [ˈstɔːri] история, рассказ

straight [streɪt] прямой

straight ahead прямо вперед

strange [streɪndʒ] странный, незнакомый

straw [strɔː] солома

strength [streŋθ] сила

stripe [streɪp] полоса

strong [strɔŋ] сильный

student [ˈstjuːdənt] студент, учащийся

study [ˈstʌdi] кабинет; изучать

subject [ˈsʌbdʒekt] предмет

success [səkˈsʌs] успех

to be a success иметь успех

to have success иметь успех

suddenly [ˈsʌdəli] вдруг

suffer from страдать от

sugar [ˈʃʊɡər] сахар

sugary [ˈʃʊɡəri] 1. сахаристый 2. сладкий

suit [sjuːt] подходить, устраивать

It suits you well. Тебе это хорошо подходит.

summer [ˈsʌmə] лето

sun [sʌn] солнце

Sunday [ˈsʌndi] воскресенье

on Sunday в воскресенье

sunglasses [ˈsʌŋɡləsɪz] солнечные очки
sunny [ˈsʌni] солнечный
supermarket [ˈʃuːpraˌmɑːkɪt] универсам
supper [ˈsʌpə] ужин

to have for supper на ужин
sure [ʃʊə] увереный

to be sure of быть уверенным в
surname [ˈsɜːnmɪn] фамилия
surprise [ˈsəpraɪz] удивление
swallow [ˈswɔləʊ] глотать
sweater [ˈswetə] свитер
sweet [swɪt] n. конфета; adj. сладкий
swim [swɪm] (swam; swum) плавать
swimming pool [ˈswɪmɪŋ pʊl] плавательный бассейн
symbol [ˈsɪmbɔːl] символ
symptom [ˈsɪmpətəm] симптом
synonym [ˈsɪnjənɪm] синоним

on the tape на пленке
tasty [ˈteɪsti] вкусный
taxes [ˈteɪksiz] налоги
taxi [ˈteksɪ] такси
tea [tiː] чай

teach [tiːtʃ] (taught; taught) обучать,
учить (кого-л.)
teacher [ˈtiːtʃə] учитель
team [tiːm] команда
telegramme [ˌtelɪɡræm] телеграмма
television [ˈtelɪvɪʒn] 1. телевизор
2. телевидение
tell [tel] (told; told) говорить

to tell smb about smth сказать
кому-то что-то

to tell a lie солгать

to tell the truth сказать правду

to tell fairy tales рассказывать
сказки
temperature [ˈtempərətʃə] температура

to have/run a high temperature иметь высокую температуру

to take one's temperature измерить температуру

tennis [ˈtenɪs] теннис

tennis day день игры в теннис
terrible [ˈterəbl] ужасный
terribly [ˈterəbli] ужасно
territory [ˈterətri] территория

the Thames [ˈθeɪms] Темза

than [ðən] чем

that [ðæt] тот, та, то

the [ðə], [ðɪ] определенный артикль
theatre [ˈθɪətr] театр

at the theatre в театре

theatre-goer [ˈθɪətərɡoʊə] театрал

their [ðeə] их (чей?)

them [ðəm] им, о них, их (кого?)
thematic [ˈθemætɪk] тематический
theme [θi:m] тема
then [ðen] тогда, затем
there [ðeə] там
these [ði:z] эти
they [ði:] они

They say... Говорят...

thing [θiŋ] вещь

think [θiŋk] (thought; thought) думать

thirsty [θɔːsti] жаждущий пить
to be thirsty хотеть пить
this [ðɪs] этот, эта, это

this Monday в этот понедельник

though [ðəʊ] хотя

thought [θɔːt] мысль

thousand [ˈθaʊzənd] тысяча

throat [θɔːt] горло
to have a sore throat иметь больное горло

through [θruː] сквозь, через
to look through просматривать
through train экспресс

throw [θrəʊ] (threw; thrown) бросать

Thursday [ˈθɜːzdi] четверг

ticket [ˈtɪkɪt] билет

a ticket to a city билет до города

a ticket for a play (for a train) билет на спектакль (на поезд)
a single ticket билет в одном направлении

a return ticket билет в оба конца

a ticket office билетная касса
tidy [ˈtaɪdi] аккуратный, опрятный
tie [taɪ] а галстук; в завязывать
tiger [ˈtaɪɡə] тигр
tights [taɪts] колготки
time 1 [taɪm] время

time II [taɪm] раз

3 times a day 3 раза в день
timetable [ˌtæmɪtɪbəl] расписание

on the timetable в расписании
tin [tn] консервная банка

a tin of meat банка мясных консервов
tired [taɪəd] усталый
to be tired быть усталым

title [ˈtaɪtl] заглавие
tobacco [ˈtəʊbəkəʊ] табак
toe [toʊ] палец ноги
together [təˈgeðə] вместе
toilet [ˈtɔɪli] туалет

tomorrow [təˈmɔrəʊ] завтра
tongue [tɔŋ] язык
tonight [təˈnaɪt] сегодня вечером
tonsillitis [ˈtɔnsɪlɪtɪs] ангина
too [tu] 1. тоже 2. слишком
tooth [tuθ] (teeth [tiθ]) зуб (зубы)
toothbrush [ˈtuθbrʌʃ] зубная щетка
toothpaste [ˈtuθpɑːst] зубная паста
top [tɒp] вершина

at the top of smth на верху че-

go-л.
topic [ˈtɒpɪk] тема
tortoise [ˈtɔrtəs] черепаха
tourism [ˈtɔːrɪzəm] туризм
tourist [ˈtʊrɪst] турист

tourist class второй класс на са-

моходе
towel [ˈtəʊəl] полотенце
tower [ˈtɔʊər] башня
town [taʊn] город (любой)
in town в городе

out of town вне города

tractor [ˈtrækta] трактор

tradition [trəˈdɪʃən] традиция

traditional [trəˈdɪʃənl] традиционный

traffic [ˈtræfɪk] движение (уличное)
There is a lot of traffic here. Здесь много движения.

traffic lights ['træfɪk lɪts] светофор

train 1 [treɪn] a поезд
by train поездом

train 2 [træin] v тренироваться

trainers [trɪnəz] кроссовки

training [træɪnɪŋ] тренировка

transport ['trɑːnspɔ:t] транспорт

to travel by smth путешествовать на чем-то

to travel east путешествовать на восток

traveller ['trævɪə] путешественник

trip [trɪp] поездка, короткое путешествие

to go on a trip поехать в путешествие

trolleybus ['trɒlɪbʌs] тrolleybus

trouble [ˈtrʌbl] n беда, неприятность; в беспокойстве

true [truː] правдивый

try [trai] пытаться, пробовать, стараться

to try on примерять

Tuesday [ˈtjuːzdeɪ] вторник

tunnel [ˈtʌnəl] туннель

turkey ['tɜːkɪ] индюшка

turn [tɜːn] поворачивать

to turn to the left поворачивать налево

to turn to the right поворачивать направо

to turn off выключать

to turn on включать

TV [tiːv] телевизор

twice [twɑːs] дважды

type [taɪp] печатать

typist ['taɪpɪst] машинистка

ugly ['ʌglɪ] некрасивый, уродливый

uncle ['ʌŋkl] дядя

uncomfortable [ʌnˈkʌmfortəbl] неудобный

uncountable [ʌnˈkaʊntəbl] неисчисляемое

under ['ʌndər] под

underground ['ʌndəgrəʊnd] метро, подземка

to take the underground ехать на метро

underline ['ʌndəˌlaɪn] подчеркивать

underlined word подчеркнутое слово

understand [ˈʌndərstaɪnd] (understood; understood) понимать

uneasy [ʌnˈeɪzi] нелегкий

unfinished [ʌnˈfɪnɪʃt] незаконченный

unfortunately [ʌnˈfɔtʃəntli] к несчастью

unfriendly [ʌnˈfrɛndli] недружелюбный

unhappy [ʌnˈhæpi] несчастливый

uniform [ˈjuːnɪfɔːm] форма

unimportant [ʌnˈɪmportənt] неважный

the United States of America (the United States) Соединенные Штаты Америки

unkind [ʌnˈkaɪnd] недобрый
unnecessary  [ʌnɪˈnesətɪ]  ненужный
umtrue  [ʌnˈtruː]  лживый, неверный
up [ʌp]  вверх
upper [ˈʌpər]  верхний
upstairs  [ˈʌpˌstэр]  наверх
us [ʌs]  нас, нам, о нас
the USA (the US)  США
use [juːs]  использовать, употреблять
useful  [ˈjuːsfl]  полезный
used to  [juːstʌd]  иметь обыкновение делать что-то в прошлом
I used to do it. Я обычно делал это.
using [ˈjuːznɪŋ]  используя

vacation  [vəˈkeɪʃn]  каникулы
vacuum cleaner  [ˈvækjuəm klɪnər]  пылесос
vegetable  [ˈvɛgətəbl]  овощ
version  [ˈvɜːʃn]  версия, вариант
very  [ˈveri]  очень
victory  [ˈvɪktərɪ]  победа

to win a victory  выиграть победу, победить
a victory over the enemy  победа над врагом
to lead the army to victory  вести армию к победе
video  [ˈvɪdiəʊ]  видео
village  [ˈvɪlɪdʒ]  деревня
vinegar  [ˈvɪnɪɡər]  уксус
violin  [ˈvɪəlɪn]  скрипка

to play the violin  играть на скрипке
visit  [ˈvɪzɪt]  в посещение, визит; в посещать
a visiting day  день посещений

vocabulary  [ˈvɒkəbərəlɪ]  вокабуляр
voice  [vɔɪs]  голос
in a quiet voice  тихим голосом
volleyball  [ˈvɒlɪbɔːl]  волейбол

to play volleyball  играть в волейбол
voyage  [ˈvoʊidʒ]  путешествие (морек, рекой)
to go on a voyage  поехать в морское путешествие

wake up  [wake ˈʌp]  (woke up; woken up) просыпаться
walk  [wɔːk]  п пройтук, идти гулять, ходить пешком, гулять
to walk barefoot  [wɔːk ˈbɛərfl]  ходить босиком
wall  [wɔːl]  стена
want  [wɒnt]  хочет
war  [wɔː]  война
a war against  smt  война против кого-л.
to be at war  быть в войне
to go to war  идти в войну
wardrobe  [ˈwɔːdrəʊb]  шкаф
warm  [wɔːm]  теплый
warmth  [wɔːmθ]  теплота, тепло
wash  [wɔʃ]  мыть(ся), стирать
to wash up  мыть посуду
washing day  [ˈwɔʃɪŋ deɪ]  день стирки
washing machine  [ˈwɔʃɪŋ məˈʃɪn]  стиральная машина
watch  [wɔtʃ]  часы (ручные); смотреть, наблюдать
to watch TV  смотреть телевизор
water  [ˈwɔtə]  в вода; в поливать
way [weɪ] 1. путь, дорога 2. способ, образ
It's a long way. Далеко.
a way of life стиль, образ жизни
we [wi] мы
weak [wek] слабый
wealth [welθ] богатство
wealthy ['welθi] богатый
wear [weə] (wore; worn) носить
weather ['weðə] погода

Wednesday ['wenzdi] среда
on Wednesday в среду
week [wik] неделя
weekend [wɪk'end] конец недели
at the weekend в конце недели
welcome [welkəm] приветствовать, радушно принимать
You're welcome! Добро пожаловать!
well [wel] хороший, здоровый
west [west] запад
what [wɒt] что, какой
What about you? А как ты?
What a good book! Какая хорошая книга!
What's on? Что идет в кино? по телевизору?
What's the time? Сколько времени?
whatever [wɒt'evə] что бы ни было
when [wen] когда
When's the best time to...? Когда лучше...?
whenever [wen'evə] когда бы ни было
where [wɛə] где, куда
wherever [wɛə'evə] где бы ни было, куда бы ни было
which [wɪtʃ] который из
which of you кто из вас

which one? Какой? Который?
while [wʌɪl] пока, в то время как
whisper ['wɪspa] в шепот; в шептать
white [waɪt] белый
who [hu] кто
whoever [hu'evə] кто бы ни был
whole [həʊl] целый, весь
whom [hu] кому, ком, о ком
whose [huz] чей

why [wai] 1. почему, зачем 2. в чем дело
Why don't you...? Почему ты не...

wide [wʌd] широкий
widespread ['wɪdspaʊd] широко распространенный
width [wɪð] ширина
wife [waɪf] жена
wild [wʌld] дикий
win [win] (won; won) выигрывать, побеждать
wind [wɪnd] ветер
windy [wɪndi] ветреный
window [ˈwIndəʊ] окно
wing [wɪŋ] крыло
winner [ˈwInə] победитель
winter [ˈwɪntə] зима
wise [wais] мудрый
wish [wɪʃ] желать
witch [wɪtʃ] ведьма
with [wɪð] с
without [wɪðaut] без
wolf [wʊlf] (wolves ['wəlvz]) волк (волки)
woman [ˈwʊmən] (women [ˈwʊmən]) женщина (женщины)

wonder [ˈwʌndə] а чудо; с удивляться, интересоваться
I wonder... Интересно...
wonderful [ˈwʌndəfl] удивительный, замечательный
wood [wʊd] 1. дерево 2. лес
wooden [ˈwʊdn] деревянный
wool [wʊl] шерсть
woollen [ˈwʊlən] шерстяной
word [wɜːd] слово
work [wɜːk] к работе; в работать
work of art произведение искусства
work of fiction произведение художественной литературы
worker [wɜːkə] рабочий
world [wɜːld] мир, свет, вселенная
all over the world по всему свету
worry ['wʌri] беспокоиться, мучиться
worse [wɜːs] хуже
the worst самый плохой
wrap [ræp] заворачивать
write [raɪt] (wrote; written) писать
writer [ˈraɪta] писатель
written [ˈrɪtn] написанный
in written form письменно
wrong [rəʊŋ] неправильный

year [jɪə] год
yellow [ˈjeləʊ] желтый
yesterday [ˈjestədi] вчера
yet [jɪt] 1. еще 2. уже
you [juː] ты, вы
You are back. Ты вернулся.
You don’t say so! Не может быть!
You see. Видишь ли.
young [jʌŋ] молодой
your [jɔː] твой, ваш

zoo [zuː] зоопарк
at the zoo в зоопарке
IRREGULAR VERBS

be [bi:] was [waz], were [w3:] been [b3n]
become [br'kam] became [br'km] become [br'km]
begin [br'gin] began [br'gan] begun [br'gan]
blow [bləʊ] blew [blu:] blown [bləʊn]
bring [brɪŋ] brought [brɔt] brought [brɔt]
build [bɪld] built [bɪlt] built [bɪlt]
burn [bɜrn] burnt [bɜːnt] (burned) burnt [bɜːnt] (burned)
buy [bju] bought [bɔt] bought [bɔt]
catch [kætʃ] caught [kɔtʃ] caught [kɔtʃ]
choose [tʃuζ] chose [tʃuζ] chosen [tʃuζn]
come [kʌm] came [kæm] come [kʌm]
cost [kɔst] cost [kɔst] cost [kɔst]
do [du] did [dɪd] done [dʌn]
draw [drɔ] drew [drɔ] drawn [drɔn]
drink [drɪŋk] drank [drɪŋk] drunk [drɪŋk]

cut [kʌt] ate [eɪt] eaten [ˈɛtn]
fall [fɔl] fell [fɛl] fallen [ˈfɔldn]
fool [fuːl] felt [fɛlt] felt [fɛlt]
fight [fɔɪt] fought [fɔʊt] fought [fɔʊt]
find [faind] found [fɔʊnd] found [fɔʊnd]
fly [flaɪ] flew [fluː] flown [flʌn]
forget [fəˈɡet] forgot [fəˈɡet] forgotten [fəˈɡən]
get [get] got [ɡot] got [ɡot]
give [ɡɪv] gave [ɡiːv] given [ˈɡɪvn]
go [ɡo] went [wɛnt] gone [ɡən]
grow [ɡrəʊ] grew [ɡriː] grown [ɡrəʊn]

have [hæv] had [hæd] had [hæd]
have [hæv] had [hæd] had [hæd]
have [hæv] had [hæd] had [hæd]
have [hæv] had [hæd] had [hæd]
have [hæv] had [hæd] had [hæd]
speak [spık] spoke [spʊk] spoken [ˈspəʊkən]
spend [spend] spent [spent] spent [spent]
stand [stænd] stood [stʊd] stood [stʊd]
steal [stiːl] stole [stəʊl] stolen [ˈstəʊlən]
swim [swɪm] swam [swæm] swum [swʌm]
take [teɪk] took [tʊk] taken [ˈteɪkt]
teach [tiːtʃ] taught [tɔːt] taught [tɔːt]
tell [tel] told [tɔːld] told [tɔːld]
think [θɪŋk] thought [θɔːt] thought [θɔːt]
throw [θrəʊ] threw [θruː] thrown [θruːn]
understand [ˈʌndərstaʊnd] understood [ˈʌndərstaʊd] understood [ˈʌndərstaʊd]
wake (up) [wɛk] woke (up) [wɔːk] woken (up) [ˈwɔːkən]
wear [weər] wore [wɔː] worn [wɔːn]
win [win] won [wɔn] won [wɔn]
write [raɪt] wrote [raʊt] written [ˈrɪt]
CONTENTS

ROUND-UP LESSONS .............. 3
Lesson 1 ........................ 4
Personal Identification
Text “A Friendly Family” .... 15
Lesson 2 ........................ 17
Daily Life ...................... —
Text “Peter's Holiday” ..... 27
Lesson 3 ........................ 30
Free Time ...................... —
Text “Whatever Happened to
Uncle Oscar”, part I ....... 40
Lesson 4 ........................ 45
Travelling ...................... —
Text “My Friend Is an
Alien” ......................... 56
Lesson 5 ........................ 62
So Many Countries So Many
Customs ...................... —
Text “More about British and
Russian Traditions” ..... 74

BASIC COURSE ................. 79
The World Around Us .......... 80
Lesson 6 ........................ —
Text “Continents and Coun-
tries” ......................... 88
Lesson 7 ........................ 96
Text “English-speaking Coun-
tries” ......................... 106
Lesson 8 ........................ 109
Text “Animals in Danger” .. 118
Lesson 9 ........................ 122
Text “Twelve Flowers of the
Year” ......................... 131
Lesson 10 ....................... 136
Text “The Earth Is in Danger” 144
Lesson 11. Review 1 .......... 147
The Geography and Political
Outlook of the UK .......... 152
Lesson 12 ....................... —
Text “The Land and the
People of Great Britain” .. 160
Lesson 13 ....................... 165
Text “The Queen and Parlia-
ment” ......................... 175
Lesson 14 ....................... 179
Text “The British Way of
Life” ......................... 186
Health and Body Care .......... 190
Lesson 15 ....................... —
Text “At the Doctor’s” ..... 200
Lesson 16 ....................... 203
Text “Ronald Is Really Ill” 213
Lesson 17 ....................... 216
Text “What We Should Do
to Keep Fit” ............... 226
Lesson 18. Review 2 .......... 228
Sports and Games ............. 231
Учебное издание

Верещагина Ирина Николаевна
Афанасьева Ольга Васильевна

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

Учебник для V класса
некол с углубленным изучением
английского языка,
лицеев, гимназий, кадетских

Центра германических языков
Руководитель Центра В. В. Кошелько
Зам. руководителя Н. И. Макеевская
Редактор Е. И. Буинова
Художественный редактор Э. Е. Волды
Художник З. Ю. Быковская
Технический редактор Н. И. Баженова
Корректор З. Ф. Юраска

Палоговая выгода — Общероссийский классификатор продукции ОК 035-93—953600.
Изд. лиц. Серия ИД № 05824 от 12.09.01. Подписано в печать с дисковыми пласт. 26.05.08.
Формат 70×90 1/16. Бумага офсетная. Гарнитура Школьная. Печать офсетная.
Уч.-изд. л. 16,82·0,47 фона. Доп. тираж 50 000 экз. Заказ № 20582 о-го.

Открытое акционерное общество «Издательство «Просвещение»: 127521, Москва, 3-й проезд Марьиной рощи, 41.
Открытое акционерное общество «Смоленский полиграфический комбинат», 214020, г. Смоленск, ул. Спасская, 1.
So do (am...) I.
И я (он, мы ...) тоже.

Alice is at school.
So am I.

Alice has got a cat.
So have I.

Alice lives in Moscow.
So does Pete.

Bob likes milk.
So do I.

They can swim.
So can she.

You will go to the US.
So shall we.

He was in London in 1995.
So were we.

My cat played a lot.
So did mine.

I had a dog last year.
So did (had) she.

They could read, but not very well.
So could they.

He has broken a plate.
So has she.
Neither do (am...) I.
И я (он, мы ...) тоже.

Kate is not at home.
Bob hasn’t got a computer.
They don’t live in Paris.
Alan doesn’t like soup.
Bill can’t write.
They won’t go to Kiev.
You were not in Africa last week.
The dog didn’t drink milk.
They didn’t have a car 3 years ago.
Betty couldn’t read when she was 5.
I haven’t finished reading the book.

Neither is Nick.
Neither has Ann.
Neither do we.
Neither do I.
Neither can Ann.
Neither shall (will) I.
Neither was she.
Neither did the cat.
Neither did we.
Neither could he.
Neither have I.